translationWords

v8

Copyrights & Licensing

License

Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0)

This is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

You are free to:

- **Share** — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- **Adapt** — remix, transform, and build upon the material

for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

Under the following conditions:

- **Attribution** — You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at https://door43.org/." Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- **ShareAlike** — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

No additional restrictions — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

Notices:

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

Date: 2017-11-29
Version: 8

Table of Contents

Key Terms ... 23
abomination, abominations, abominable ... 24
adoption, adopt, adopted ... 25
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses ... 26
Almighty ... 28
altar, altars ... 29
amen, truly ... 30
angel, angels, archangel ... 31
anoint, anointed, anointing ... 33
antichrist, antichrists ... 35
apostle, apostles, apostleship ... 36
appoint, appoints, appointed ... 38
ark ... 39
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh ... 40
atonement lid ... 41
atonement, atone, atones, atoned ... 42
authority, authorities ... 43
baptize, baptized, baptism ... 45
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief ... 47
beloved ... 50
bind, bond, bound ... 51
birthright ... 53
blameless ... 54
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies ... 55
bless, blessed, blessing ... 56
blood ... 58
boast, boasts, boastful ... 60
body, bodies ... 62
born again, born of God, new birth ... 64
brother, brothers ... 65
call, calls, calling, called ... 67
centurion, centurions ... 69
children, child ... 70
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect ... 72
Christ, Messiah ... 74
Christian ... 76
church, churches, Church ... 78
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision ... 80
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean ... 82
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments ... 84
compassion, compassionate ... 86
condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation ... 87
confess, confessed, confesses, confession ... 88
conscience, consciences ... 89
consecrate, consecrated, consecration ... 90
cornerstone, cornerstones ... 91
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love ... 92
covenant, covenants, new covenant ... 93
cross ... 96
crucify, crucified ... 98
curse, cursed, curses, cursing ... 100
daughter of Zion ... 102

day of the Lord, day of Yahweh ... 103
deacon, deacons ... 104
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit ... 105
demon-possessed ... 107
disciple, disciples ... 108
discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline ... 110
divine ... 111
dominion ... 112
ephod ... 113
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever ... 114
eunuch, eunuchs ... 116
evangelist, evangelists ... 117
evil, wicked, wickedness ... 118
exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation ... 120
exhort, exhortation ... 121
faith ... 122
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness ... 124
faithless, faithlessness ... 126
favor, favors, favorable, favoritism ... 127
fear, fears, afraid ... 128
fellowship ... 130
filled with the Holy Spirit ... 131
flesh ... 132
fool, fools, foolish, folly ... 134
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned ... 135
forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook ... 137
fulfill, fulfilled ... 138
Gentile, Gentiles ... 140
gift, gifts ... 141
glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies ... 142
God ... 145
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father ... 148
god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry ... 150
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness ... 152
good news, gospel ... 154
good, goodness ... 156
grace, gracious ... 158
guilt, guilty ... 159
Hades, Sheol ... 161
heart, hearts ... 163
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly ... 165
Hebrew, Hebrews ... 167
hell, lake of fire ... 168
high priest ... 170
Holy One ... 172
holy place ... 173
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit ... 175
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred ... 177
honor, honors ... 179
hope, hoped, hopes ... 180
house of God, Yahweh's house ... 182
humble, humbles, humbled, humility ... 183
hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy ... 184
image of God, image ... 185

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him 186
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir 188
iniquity, iniquities 190
innocent 191
intercede, intercededs, intercession 193
Israel, Israelites 194
jealous, jealousy 196
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus 197
Jew, Jewish, Jews 199
judge, judges, judgment, judgments 200
judgment day 202
just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification 203
King of the Jews, king of the Jews 206
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven 208
lamb, Lamb of God 210
lament, laments, lamentation 212
last day, last days, latter days 213
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh 214
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive 216
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God 218
Lord's Supper 220
lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs 221
love, loves, loving, loved 224
majesty 227
manna 228
mercy, merciful 229
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs 231
Most High 233
myrrh 234
name, names, named 235
Nazirite, Nazirites, Nazirite vow 237
parable, parables 238
Passover 239
pastor, pastors 241
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks 242
people of God, my people 243
perish, perished, perishing, perishable 245
Pharisee, Pharisees 246
power, powers 247
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed 249
predestine, predestined 251
priest, priests, priesthood 252
promise, promises, promised 254
Promised Land 256
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 258
propitiation 260
psalm, psalms 261
pure, purify, purification 262
Rabbi 264
ransom, ransomed 265
reconcile, reconciles, reconciled, reconciliation 266
redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer 267
remnant 269
repent, repents, repented, repentance 270

restore, restores, restored, restoration ... 272
resurrection ... 273
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation ... 274
right hand ... 275
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness ... 277
Sabbath ... 280
Sadducee, Sadducees ... 282
saint, saints ... 283
sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification ... 284
sanctuary ... 285
Satan, devil, evil one ... 286
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation ... 288
Savior, savior ... 290
scribe, scribes ... 291
set apart ... 292
sign, signs, proof, reminder ... 293
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning ... 295
Son of God, Son ... 297
Son of Man, son of man ... 299
son, sons ... 301
sons of God ... 303
soul, souls ... 305
spirit, spirits, spiritual ... 306
stone, stones, stoning ... 308
synagogue ... 309
tabernacle ... 310
temple ... 312
tempt, temptation ... 314
test, tests, tested ... 316
testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses ... 318
tetrarch ... 321
the twelve, the eleven ... 322
to minister, ministry ... 323
transgress, transgresses, transgression ... 324
trespass, trespasses, trespassed ... 325
true, truth, truths ... 326
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness ... 328
unleavened bread ... 330
vow, vows, vowed ... 331
will of God ... 332
wise, wisdom ... 333
woe ... 335
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures ... 336
works, deeds, work, acts ... 338
world, worldly ... 340
worship ... 342
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless ... 344
wrath, fury ... 346
Yahweh ... 347
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of heaven, host of the heavens, Lord of hosts ... 349
zeal, zealous ... 350
Zion, Mount Zion ... 351
Names ... 352
Aaron ... 353

Abel 354
Abiathar 355
Abijah 356
Abimelech 357
Abner 358
Abraham, Abram 359
Absalom 361
Adam 362
Adonijah 364
Ahab 365
Ahasuerus 366
Ahaz 367
Ahaziah 368
Ahijah 369
Ai 370
Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites 371
Amaziah 372
Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites 373
Amnon 374
Amorite, Amorites 375
Amos 376
Amoz 377
Andrew 378
Annas 379
Antioch 380
Apollos 381
Aquila 382
Arabah 383
Arabia, Arabian, Arabians 384
Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic 385
Ararat 386
Artaxerxes 387
Asa 388
Asaph 389
Ashdod, Azotus 390
Asher 391
Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths 392
Ashkelon 393
Asia 394
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire 395
Athaliah 396
Azariah 397
Baal 398
Baasha 400
Babel 401
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians 402
Balaam 404
Barabbas 405
Barnabas 406
Bartholomew 407
Baruch 408
Bashan 409
Bathsheba 410
Beelzebul 411

Beersheba 412
Benaiah 413
Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites 414
Berea 415
Beth Shemesh 416
Bethany 417
Bethel 418
Bethlehem, Ephrathah 419
Bethuel 420
Boaz 421
Caesar 422
Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi 423
Caiaphas 424
Cain 425
Caleb 426
Cana 427
Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites 428
Capernaum 429
Carmel, Mount Carmel 430
Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans 431
Cilicia 432
city of David 433
Colossae, Colossians 434
Corinth, Corinthians 435
Cornelius 436
Crete, Cretan, Cretans 437
Cush 438
Cyprus 439
Cyrene 440
Cyrus 441
Damascus 442
Dan 443
Daniel 444
Darius 445
David 446
Delilah 448
Eden, garden of Eden 449
Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea 450
Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians 451
Ekron, Ekronites 452
Elam, Elamites 453
Eleazar 454
Eliakim 455
Elijah 456
Elisha 458
Elizabeth 459
En Gedi 460
Enoch 461
Ephesus, Ephesian, Ephesians 462
Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites 463
Ephrath, Ephrathah, Ephrathite, Ephrathites 464
Esau 465
Esther 466
Ethiopia, Ethiopian 467

Euphrates River, the River 468
Eve 469
Ezekiel 470
Ezra 471
Gabriel 472
Gad 473
Galatia, Galatians 474
Galilee, Galilean, Galileans 475
Gath, Gittite, Gittites 476
Gaza 477
Gerar 478
Geshur, Geshurites 479
Gethsemane 480
Gibeah 481
Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites 482
Gideon 483
Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites 485
Gilgal 486
Girgashites 487
Golgotha 488
Goliath 489
Gomorrah 490
Goshen 491
Greece, Grecian 492
Greek, Grecian 493
Habakkuk 494
Hagar 495
Haggai 496
Ham 497
Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath 498
Hamor 499
Hananiah 500
Hannah 501
Haran 502
Hebron 503
Herod Antipas 504
Herod the Great 505
Herodias 506
Hezekiah 507
Hilkiah 508
Hittite, Hittites 509
Hivite, Hivites 510
Horeb 511
Hosea 512
Hoshea 513
house of David 514
Iconium 515
Isaac 516
Isaiah 518
Ishmael, Ishmaelite, Ishmaelites 520
Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob 521
Issachar 523
James (brother of Jesus) 524
James (son of Alphaeus) 525

James (son of Zebedee) 526
Japheth 527
Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites 528
Jehoiachin 529
Jehoiada 530
Jehoiakim 531
Jehoram, Joram 532
Jehoshaphat 533
Jehu 534
Jephthah 535
Jeremiah 536
Jericho 537
Jeroboam 538
Jerusalem 539
Jesse 541
Jethro, Reuel 542
Jezebel 543
Jezreel, Jezreelite 544
Joab 545
Joash 546
Job 547
Joel 548
John (the apostle) 549
John (the Baptist) 551
John Mark 553
Jonah 554
Jonathan 555
Joppa 556
Joram 557
Jordan River, Jordan 558
Joseph (NT) 559
Joseph (OT) 561
Joshua 562
Josiah 564
Jotham 565
Judah 566
Judah, kingdom of Judah 567
Judas Iscariot 569
Judas the son of James 571
Judea 572
Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh 573
Kedar 574
Kedesh 575
Kerethites 576
Kidron Valley 577
kingdom of Israel 578
Korah, Korahite, Korahites 580
Laban 581
Lamech 582
Lazarus 583
Leah 584
Lebanon 585
Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical 586
Leviathan 587

Lot 588
Luke 589
Lystra 590
Maacah 591
Macedonia 592
Maker 593
Malachi 594
man of God 595
Manasseh 596
Martha 597
Mary (sister of Martha) 598
Mary Magdalene 599
Mary, the mother of Jesus 600
Matthew, Levi 602
Medes, Media 603
Melchizedek 604
Memphis 605
Meshech 606
Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim 607
Micah 608
Michael 609
Midian, Midianite, Midianites 610
Miriam 611
Mishael 612
Mizpah 613
Moab, Moabite, Moabitess 614
Molech, Moloch 615
Mordecai 616
Moses 617
Mount Hermon 619
Mount of Olives 620
Naaman 621
Nahor 622
Nahum 623
Naphtali 624
Nathan 625
Nazareth, Nazarene 626
Nebuchadnezzar 627
Negev 629
Nehemiah 630
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile 631
Nineveh, Ninevite 632
Noah 633
Obadiah 634
Omri 635
Paddan Aram 636
Paran 637
Paul, Saul 638
Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor 640
Perizzite 641
Persia, Persians 642
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas 643
Pharaoh, king of Egypt 645
Philip, the apostle 646

Philip, the evangelist 647
Philippi, Philippians 648
Philistia 649
Philistines 650
Phinehas 651
Phoenicia 652
Pilate 653
Pontus 655
Potiphar 656
Priscilla 657
Rabbah 658
Rachel 659
Rahab 660
Ramah 661
Ramoth 662
Rebekah 663
Rehoboam 664
Reuben 665
Rimmon 666
Rome, Roman 667
Ruth 668
Salt Sea, Dead Sea 669
Samaria, Samaritan 670
Samson 672
Samuel 673
Sarah, Sarai 674
Saul (OT) 675
Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias 676
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea 677
Sennacherib 678
Seth 679
Sharon, Plain of Sharon 680
Sheba 681
Shechem 682
Shem 683
Shiloh 684
Shimei 685
Shinar 686
Sidon, Sidonians 687
Silas, Silvanus 688
Simeon 690
Simon the Zealot 691
Sinai, Mount Sinai 692
Sodom 693
Solomon 694
Stephen 696
Succoth 697
Syria 698
Tamar 699
Tarshish 700
Tarsus 701
Terah 702
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea 703
Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians 704

Thomas 705
Timothy 706
Tirzah 707
Titus 708
Troas 709
Tubal 710
Tychicus 711
Tyre, Tyrians 712
Ur 713
Uriah 714
Uzziah, Azariah 715
Vashti 716
Zacchaeus 717
Zadok 718
Zebedee 719
Zebulun 720
Zechariah (NT) 721
Zechariah (OT) 722
Zedekiah 723
Zephaniah 724
Zerubbabel 725
Zoar 726
Other 727
abyss, bottomless pit 728
acacia 729
accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations 730
acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted 731
acquit, acquits, acquitted 732
administration, administrator, administrators, administered, administering 733
admonish 734
adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies 735
advice, advise, advised, advisor, advisors, counsel, counselor, counselors, counsels 736
afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions 737
age, ages, aged 739
alarm, alarms, alarmed 740
alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners 741
alms 742
altar of incense, incense altar 743
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders 744
ambassador, ambassadors, representative, representatives 745
ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather 746
anger, angered, angry 748
anguish 749
archer, archers 750
armor, armory 751
arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance 752
ash, ashes, dust 753
asleep, fall asleep, fell asleep, fallen asleep, sleep, sleeps, slept, sleeping, sleeper, sleepless, sleepy .....
assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled 755 754
assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign 756
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, led astray, stray, strayed, strays 757
avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance 758
awe, awesome 760
ax, axes 761

banquet 762
barley 763
barren 764
basket, baskets, basketfuls 765
bear, bears 766
bear, bears, bearing, bearer 767
beast, beasts 768
beg, begged, begging, beggar 769
betray, betrays, betrayed, betraying, betrayer, betrayers 770
blemish, blemishes, unblemished 772
bloodshed 773
blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe out, wipes out, wiped out 774
bold, boldly, boldness, emboldened 775
Book of Life 776
bow and arrow, bows and arrows 777
bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down 778
bread 780
breastplate, breastplates, breastpiece 781
breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing 782
bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery 784
bride, brides, bridal 785
bridegroom, bridegrooms 786
bronze 787
burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome 788
burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire 789
bury, buries, buried, burying, burial 790
camel, camels 791
captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity 792
cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out 794
caught up, caught up with, catch up with 795
cedar, cedars, cedarwood 796
census 797
chaff 798
chariot, chariots, charioteers 799
cherub, cherubim, cherubs 800
chief priests 802
chief, chiefs 803
chronicles 804
cistern, cisterns, well, wells 805
citizen, citizens, citizenship 807
clan, clans 808
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed 809
column, columns, pillar, pillars 810
comfort, comforts, comforted, comforting, comforter, comforters, uncomforted 811
commander, commanders 813
commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment 814
companion, companions 815
conceive, conceives, conceived, conception 816
concubine, concubines 817
confidence, confident, confidently 818
confirm, confirms, confirmed, confirmation 819
consume, consumes, consumed, consuming 820
contempt, contemptible 822
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness, false witnesses 823

corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility 824
council, councils 825
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, take courage, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging 826
court, courts, courtyard, courtyards 828
cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen 830
create, creates, created, creation, creator 832
creature, creatures 834
crime, crimes, criminal, criminals 835
crown, crowns, crowned 836
cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries 838
cupbearer, cupbearers 839
cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy 840
curtain, curtains 842
cut off, cuts off, cutting off 843
cypress 844
darkness 845
day, days 847
deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive 848
declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations 850
decree, decrees, decreed 851
dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication 852
deer, doe, does, fawns, roebuck, roebucks 853
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled 854
delight, delights, delighted, delightful 856
deliver, delivers, delivered, delivering, deliverer, deliverance 857
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants 859
desecrate, desecrated, desecrating 860
desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses 861
desolate, desolation, desolations 862
destine, destined, destiny, predestined 863
destroy, destroys, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying 864
detest, detested, detestable 865
devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations 866
devour, devours, devoured, devouring 867
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly 868
discern, discerned, discerning, discernment 870
disgrace, disgraces, disgraced, disgraceful 871
dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable 872
disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient 873
disperse, dispersion 875
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer 876
divorce 877
doctrine 878
donkey, mule 879
doom 880
doorpost 881
dove, pigeon 882
dream 883
drink offering 885
drunk, drunkard 886
dung, manure 887
eagle, eagles 888

earth, earthen, earthly 889
elder, elders 890
endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance 891
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound 892
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice 893
envy, covet 896
epistle, letter, letters 897
evildoer, evildoers, evildoing 898
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins 899
exile, exiles, exiled 901
exult, exults, exulting, exultant 902
face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown 903
false prophet, false prophets 905
family, families 906
famine, famines 907
fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings 908
feast, feasts, feasting 909
fellowship offering, fellowship offerings 910
festival, festivals 911
fig, figs 912
fir, firs 913
fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots 914
firstborn 915
firstfruits 916
fishermen, fishers 917
flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds 918
flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters 919
flute, flutes, pipe, pipes 921
footstool 922
foreknew, foreknowledge 923
found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations 924
fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing 925
frankincense 926
free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty 927
freewill offering, freewill offerings 929
fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful 930
furnace 932
gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways 933
generation 934
giant, giants 935
gird, girded 936
glean, gleans, gleaned, gleanings 937
goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids 938
gold, golden 939
gossip, gossips, gossiper, talk nonsense 940
govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls 941
grain offering, grain offerings 942
grain offering, grain offerings, meal offerings 943
grain, grains, grainfields 944
grape, grapes, grapevine 945
grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place 946
groan, groans, groaned, groaning, groanings 948
guilt offering, guilt offerings 949

had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with 950
hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm 951
hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of 952
hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung 954
hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness 955
harp, harps, harpist, harpists 957
harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters 958
haughty 959
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded 960
heir, heirs 962
high place, high places 963
holy city, holy cities 964
honey, honeycomb 965
hoof, hoofs, hooves 966
horn, horns, horned 967
horror, horrors, horrible, horribly, horrified, horrifying 968
horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback 969
horseman, horsemen 970
hour, hours 971
hour, hours 972
house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers 973
household, households 975
humiliate, humiliated, humiliation 976
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures 977
imitate, imitator, imitators 978
incense, incenses 979
inquire, inquires, inquired, inquiries 980
instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors 981
integrity 982
interpret, interprets, interpreted, interpreting, interpretation, interpretations, interpreter 983
Jewish authorities, Jewish leader 984
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing 986
Judaism, Jewish religion 988
judge, judges 989
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen 990
kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses 991
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly 992
kingdom, kingdoms 994
kiss, kisses, kissed, kissing 996
know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge 997
labor, in labor, labor pains 999
labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers 1000
lamp, lamps 1001
lampstand, lampstands 1002
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles 1003
lawful, lawfully, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness 1004
learned men, astrologers 1006
leopard, leopards 1007
leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous 1008
light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened 1009

like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike 1011
lions, lion, lioness, lionesses 1013
livestock 1014
locust, locusts 1015
loins 1016
lots, casting lots 1017
lover, lovers 1018
lowly, lowliest, lowliness 1019
lust, lusts, lusted, lusting, lustful 1020
lute, lyre, lyres 1021
magic, magical, magician, magicians 1022
magistrate, magistrates 1023
manager, managers, steward, stewards, stewardship 1024
mediator 1025
meditate, meditates, meditation 1026
meek, meekness 1027
melt, melted, melting, melts, molten 1028
member, members 1029
memorial, memorial offering 1030
messenger, messengers 1031
might, mighty, mightier, mightily 1032
mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded ....
mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed ... 1034
at 1036
mold, molds, molded, molding, molder, moldy 1038
month, months, monthly 1039
mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully 1040
multiply, multiplies, multiplied, multiplying, multiplication 1041
mystery, mysteries, hidden truth, hidden truths 1042
nation, nations 1043
neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring 1045
new moon, new moons 1046
noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen 1047
oak, oaks 1048
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by 1049
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, ...
disobedience, disobedient 1051
offspring 1053
oil 1054
olive, olives 1055
on high, in the highest 1056
oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors 1057
ordain, ordained, ordinary, ordination 1058
ordinance, ordinances 1059
oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers 1060
overtake, overtakes, overtaken, overtook 1061
pagan, pagans 1062
palace, palaces 1063
palm, palms 1064
partial, be partial, partiality 1065
patient, patiently, patience, impatient 1066
patriarch, patriarchs 1067
peace offering, peace offerings 1068
peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers 1069

people group, peoples, the people, a people 1071
perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly 1073
persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors 1074
persevere, perseverance 1076
perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting 1077
pierce, pierces, pierced, piercing 1079
pig, pigs, pork, swine 1080
pit, pits, pitfall 1081
plague, plagues 1082
plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing .....
plea, pleas, plead, pleads, pleaded, pleading, pleadings 1085 1083
pledge, pledged, pledges 1086
plow, plows, plowed, plowing, plowers, plowman, plowmen, plowshares, unplowed 1087
pomegranate, pomegranates 1088
possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess 1089
praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy 1091
preach, preached, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, ...
proclamations 1093
precious 1095
prey, prey on 1096
prince, princes, princess, princesses 1097
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments 1099
profane, profaned, profaning 1100
profit, profits, profitable, unprofitable 1101
prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous 1103
prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored 1104
prostrate, prostrated 1105
proud, proudly, pride, prideful 1106
proverb, proverbs 1108
province, provinces, provincial 1109
provoke, provokes, provoked, provoking, provocation 1110
prudence, prudent, prudently 1111
puffed up, puffs up 1112
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished 1113
purple 1115
push, pushed, pushing 1116
qualify, qualified, disqualified 1117
queen, queens 1118
quench, quenched, unquenchable 1119
rage, rages, raged, raging 1120
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose 1121
reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping 1123
rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness 1124
rebuke, rebukes, rebuked 1126
receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver 1127
reed, reeds 1129
refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering 1130
reign, reigns, reigned, reigning 1132
reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection 1133
renown, renowned 1135
report, reports, reported 1136
reproach, reproaches, reproached, reproaching, reproachfully 1137
rest, rests, rested, resting, restless 1138
return, returns, returned, returning 1140

revere, revered, reverence, reverences, reverent 1141
reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder 1142
robe, robes, robed 1143
rod, rods 1144
royal, royalty 1145
ruin, ruins, ruined 1146
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled 1147
run, runs, runner, runners, running 1148
sackcloth 1150
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings 1151
sandal, sandals 1153
scepter, scepters 1154
scroll, scrolls 1155
sea cow 1156
seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed 1157
seed, semen 1158
seek, seeks, seeking, sought 1160
seize, seizes, seized, seizure 1161
selah 1162
self-control, self-controlled, controlled self 1163
send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out 1164
serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers 1165
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication 1166
shadow, shadows, overshadow, overshadowed 1168
shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed 1169
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding 1170
shield, shields, shielded 1172
shrewd, shrewdly 1173
siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks 1174
silver 1175
sin offering, sin offerings 1176
sister, sisters 1177
skull 1178
slander, slanders, slandered, slanderers, slandering, slanderous 1179
slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering 1180
slay, slain 1181
snare, snares, ensnare, ensnares, ensnared, entrap, trap, traps, trapped 1182
snow, snowed, snowing 1183
soldier, soldiers, warrior, warriors 1184
sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft 1185
spear, spears, spearmen 1186
splendor 1187
staff, staffs 1188
statute, statutes 1189
stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness 1190
storehouse, storehouses 1191
strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening 1192
strife 1194
strong drink, strong drinks 1195
stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses 1196
stumble, stumbles, stumbled, stumbling 1197
stumbling block, stumbling blocks, stone of stumbling 1198
subject, subjects, subjected, subject to, be subject to, subjection, be subjected, are subjected, was subjected, were subjected, in subjection to 1199

submit, submits, submitted, submitting, submission, in submission 1200
suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings 1201
sulfur, sulfurous 1203
sweep, sweeps, swept, sweeping 1204
sword, swords, swordsmen 1205
tax, taxes, taxed, taxing, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector, tax collectors, ... 1207
teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught 1209
teacher, teachers, Teacher 1210
Ten Commandments 1212
tent of meeting 1214
tent, tents, tentmakers 1215
tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes 1216
terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying 1217
thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing 1218
thorn, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns, thistle, thistles 1219
thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing 1220
threshold, thresholds 1221
throne, thrones, enthroned 1222
time, timely, times, untimely 1223
tongue, tongues 1224
torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors 1226
tradition, traditions 1227
trample, tramples, trampled, trampling 1228
tremble, trembles, trembled, trembling 1229
trial, trials 1230
tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen 1231
tribulation 1232
tribute 1233
trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome 1234
trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters 1236
tunic, tunics 1237
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, ... 1238
turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes 1240
understand, understands, understood, understanding 1241
vain, vanity 1242
veil, veils, veiled, unveiled 1243
vine, vines 1244
vineyard, vineyards 1245
virgin, virgins, virginity 1246
vision, visions, envision 1247
voice, voices 1248
walk, walks, walked, walking 1249
waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands 1251
watch (biblical time), watches 1252
watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful 1253
watchtower, watchtowers, tower 1254
water, waters, watered, watering 1255
week, weeks 1257
wheat 1258
wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine 1259
winepress 1260
winnow, winnows, winnowed, winnowing, sift, sifting 1261
wise men 1262

wolf, wolves, wild dogs 1263
womb, wombs 1264
word, words 1265
written 1266
wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful 1267
year, years 1268
yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened 1269
yoke, yokes, yoked 1271

Key Terms

abomination, abominations, abominable

Definition:

The term "abomination" is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an "abomination." This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn't want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls "an abomination to Yahweh" include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an "abomination of desolation" that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "abomination" could also be translated by "something God hates" or "something disgusting" or "disgusting practice" or "very evil action."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase "is an abomination to" could include "is greatly hated by" or "is disgusting to" or "is totally unacceptable to" or "causes deep disgust."
- The phrase "abomination of desolation" could be translated as "defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed" or "disgusting thing that causes great sorrow."

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, desecrate, desecrated, desecrating, desolate, desolation, desolations, false god, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:33-34
- Isaiah 01:12-13
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Proverbs 26:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

adoption, adopt, adopted

Definition:

The terms "adopt" and "adoption" refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses "adoption" and "adopt" in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase "experience adoption as sons" could be translated as "be adopted by God as his children" or "become God's (spiritual) children."
- To "wait for the adoption of sons" could be translated as "look forward to becoming God's children" or "wait expectantly for God to receive as children."
- The phrase "adopt them" could be translated as "receive them as his own children" or "make them his own (spiritual) children."

(See also: heir, heirs, inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 01:5-6
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Romans 08:14-15
- Romans 08:23-25
- Romans 09:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5206

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses

Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife." (See: euphemism)
- When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment, covenant, covenants, new covenant, sexual immorality, sleep with, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness)

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:12-14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:27-28
- Matthew 12:38-40

- Revelation 02:22-23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:06** "Do not commit **adultery**."
- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

Almighty

Facts:

The term "Almighty" literally means "all-powerful"; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles "the Almighty" or "the Almighty One" refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles "Almighty God" and "God Almighty" and "Lord Almighty" and "Lord God Almighty."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "All-powerful" or "Completely Powerful One" or "God, who is completely powerful."
- Ways to translate the phrase "Lord God Almighty" could include "God, the Powerful Ruler" or "Powerful Sovereign God" or "Mighty God who is Master over everything."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs, power, powers)

Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:1-3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 01:7-8
- Ruth 01:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G3841

altar, altars

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 23:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

amen, truly

Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

- When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as "verily" or "truly."
- Another word meaning "truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly" and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
- When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
- The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

(See also: fulfill, fulfilled, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19-20
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

angel, angels, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, chiefs,
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
, messenger, messengers, Michael,
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled,

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:22-23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah,"I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising Godâ€¦
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: Christ, consecrate, consecrated, consecration, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, priests, priesthood, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20-21
- 1 John 02:27-29
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

antichrist, antichrists

Definition:

The term "antichrist" refers to a person or teaching that is against Jesus Christ and his work. There are many antichrists in the world.

- The apostle John wrote that a person is the antichrist if he deceives people by saying that Jesus is not the Messiah or if he denies that Jesus is both God and human.
- The Bible also teaches that there is a general spirit of antichrist in the world which opposes Jesus' work.
- The New Testament book of Revelation explains that there will be a man called "the antichrist" who will be revealed in the end times. This man will attempt to destroy God's people, but he will be defeated by Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means "Christ-opposer" or "enemy of Christ" or "person who is against Christ."
- The phrase "spirit of the antichrist" could also be translated as "spirit that is against Christ" or "(someone) teaching lies about Christ" or "attitude of believing lies about Christ" or "spirit that teaches lies about Christ."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Christ, reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation, tribulation)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:18-19
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 John 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: G500

apostle, apostles, apostleship

Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, authorities, disciple, disciples, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus' **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles'** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles'** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

appoint, appoints, appointed

Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Acts 03:19-20
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 13:48-49
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

ark

Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
- In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket, baskets, basketfuls)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:25-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, covenants, new covenant, atonement, atone, atones, atoned, holy place, testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:14-15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 07:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

atonement lid

Definition:

The "atonement lid" was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an "atonement cover."

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a "mercy seat" because it communicates God's mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "ark covering where God promises to redeem" or "place where God atones" or "lid of ark where God forgives and restores."
- Can also mean "place of propitiation."
- Compare this term with how you translated "atonement," "propitiation," and "redemption."

(See also: ark of the covenant, atonement, atone, atones, atoned, cherub, cherubim, cherubs, propitiation, redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:15-18
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Leviticus 16:1-2
- Numbers 07:89

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3727, G2435

atonement, atone, atones, atoned

Definition:

The terms "atone" and "atonement" refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people's sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ's death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "atone" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "pay for" or "provide payment for" or "cause someone's sins to be forgiven" or "make amends for a crime."
- Ways to translate "atonement" could include "payment" or "sacrifice to pay for sin" or "providing the means of forgiveness."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, propitiation, reconcile, reconciles, reconciled, reconciliation, redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Numbers 05:8-10
- Numbers 28:19-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3722, H3725, G2643

authority, authorities

Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
- Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
- When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
- The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
- The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: citizen, citizens, citizenship,
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, power, powers, rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10-12
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35-36
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:4-5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:21-22

- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Titus 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
- The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
- The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
- When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, repents, repented, repentance, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:37-39
- Acts 08:36-38
- Acts 09:17-19
- Acts 10:46-48
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G907

believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."
- Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who

trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
- Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
- The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
- The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, apostle, apostles, apostleship, Christian, disciple, disciples, faith, trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41-42
- John 01:12-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 09:40-43
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:3-4
- 1 Corinthians 06:1-3
- 1 Corinthians 09:3-6
- 2 Corinthians 06:14-16
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- 1 John 03:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me

will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"

- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesusâ€¦It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

beloved

Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
- God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love, loves, loving, loved)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14-16
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 John 04:7-8
- Mark 01:9-11
- Mark 12:6-7
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Romans 16:6-8
- Song of Solomon 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

- To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
- The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
- A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
- The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
- Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
- The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
- To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
- To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
- Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: fulfill, fulfilled, peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers,

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
,
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
, vow, vows, vowed)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

birthright

Definition:

The term "birthright" in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father's inheritance.
- A king's firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son's line.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate "birthright" could include, "rights and wealth of the firstborn son" or "family honor" or "privilege and inheritance of the firstborn."

(See also: firstborn, inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir, descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:1-3
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Genesis 43:32-34
- Hebrews 12:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1062, G4415

blameless

Definition:

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14-16
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, G273, G274, G298, G338, G410, G423

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "blasphemy" refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To "blaspheme" someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as "slander" when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "blaspheme" can be translated as to "say evil things against" or to "dishonor God" or to "slander."
- Ways to translate "blasphemy" could include "speaking wrongly about others" or "slander" or "spreading false rumors."

(See also: dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable, slander, slanders, slandered, slanderers, slandering, slanderous)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:10-11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:8-10
- Mark 14:63-65
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 26:65-66
- Psalms 074:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:14-17
- Acts 13:32-34
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 14:19-20
- Isaiah 44:3-4
- James 01:22-25
- Luke 06:20-21
- Matthew 26:26

- Nehemiah 09:5-6
- Romans 04:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

blood

Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- Acts 02:20-21
- Acts 05:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:10-12
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

boast, boasts, boastful

Definition:

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
- The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
- Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud, proudly, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11-12
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- James 03:13-14
- James 04:15-17
- Psalms 044:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

body, bodies

Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ."
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also:
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- Ephesians 04:4-6

- Judges 14:7-9
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:8-9
- Romans 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

born again, born of God, new birth

Definition:

The term "born again" was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms "born of God" and "born of the Spirit" also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a "new birth" when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God's Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God's work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "born again" could include "born anew" or "born spiritually."
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term "new birth" might be translated as "spiritual birth."
- The phrase "born of God" could be translated as "caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby" or "given new life by God."
- In the same way, "born of the Spirit" could be translated as "given new life by the Holy Spirit" or "empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God's child" or "caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby."

(See also: Holy Spirit, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:9-10
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Peter 01:22-23
- John 03:3-4
- John 03:7-8
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G313, G509, G1080, G3824

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, God the Father, sister, sisters, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2

- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."

- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: pray, prayer, prayers, prayed)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

centurion, centurions

Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means, "leader of a hundred men" or "army leader" or "officer in charge of a hundred."
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 27:1-2
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 07:2-5
- Luke 23:46-47
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 08:5-7
- Matthew 27:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1543, G2760

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term "children" is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
    - children of the light
    - children of obedience
    - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, promise, promises, promised, son, sons, spirit, spirits, spiritual, believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:27-29
- 3 John 01:1-4
- Galatians 04:19-20

- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term "the elect" literally means "chosen ones" or "chosen people" and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. "Chosen One" or "Chosen One of God" is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term "choose" means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be "chosen" means to be "selected" or "appointed" to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called "the chosen (ones) or "the elect."
- The term "chosen one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
- The phrase "the elect" is an older term that literally means "the chosen ones" or "the chosen people." This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term "elect" is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for "chosen one(s)." More modern versions use "elect" only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as "chosen ones."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "elect" with a word or phrase that means "chosen ones" or "chosen people." This could also be translated as "people whom God chose" or "the ones God appointed to be his people."
- The phrase "who were chosen" could also be translated as "who were appointed" or "who were selected" or "whom God chose."
- "I chose you" could be translated as "I appointed you" or "I selected you."
- In reference to Jesus, "Chosen One" could also be translated as "God's chosen One" or "God's specially appointed Messiah" or "the One God appointed (to save people)."

(See also: appoint, appoints, appointed, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:1-3

- Colossians 03:12-14
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:6-8
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint, anointed, anointing)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25-26

- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

Christian

Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name "Christian" which means, "follower of Christ."

- It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus' followers were first called "Christians."
- A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
- In our modern times, often the term "Christian" is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of "Christian" in the Bible.
- Because the term "Christian" in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a "believer."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "Christ-follower" or "follower of Christ" or perhaps something like, "Christ-person."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
- Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Antioch, Christ, church, churches, Church, disciple, disciples, believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:7-8
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Acts 11:25-26
- Acts 26:27-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:09** It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called "**Christians**."
- **47:14**] Paul and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **49:15** If you believe in Jesus and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian**!
- **49:16** If you are a **Christian**, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus

did.

- **49:17** Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still be tempted to sin.
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.
- **50:11** When Jesus returns, every **Christian** who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5546

church, churches, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
- In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Acts 09:31-32
- Acts 14:23-26
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 04:15-17
- Ephesians 05:22-24
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Philippians 04:14-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."
- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word

used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant, covenants, new covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:9-11
- Genesis 17:12-14
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Joshua 05:2-3
- Judges 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 01:17-20
- Jeremiah 09:25-26
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:1-3
- Acts 15:1-2
- Acts 11:1-3
- Romans 02:25-27
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Ephesians 02:11-12
- Philippians 03:1-3
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," or "free from sin."

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's

eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also:
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled,
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Psalms 051:7-9
- Proverbs 20:29-30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Luke 05:12-13
- Acts 08:6-8
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- James 04:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, decrees, decreed, statute, statutes,
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036,

G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:40-42
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: judge, judges, judgment, judgments, punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- Job 09:27-29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:7-8
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:21-22
- Romans 05:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

confess, confessed, confesses, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: faith, testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16-18
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

conscience, consciences

Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:18-20
- 1 Timothy 03:8-10
- 2 Corinthians 05:11-12
- 2 Timothy 01:3-5
- Romans 09:1-2
- Titus 01:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4893

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to "sanctify" or to "make holy," but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word "consecrate" has a meaning that is similar to "purify," especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God's service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "consecrate" could include, "set apart for God's service" or "purify for service to God."
- Also consider how the terms "holy" and "sanctify" are translated.

(See also: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, pure, sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

cornerstone, cornerstones

Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

- Acts 04:11-12
- Ephesians 02:19-22
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, covenants, new covenant, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, grace, gracious, Israel, people of God , promise, promises, promised)

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:10-11
- Numbers 14:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

covenant, covenants, new covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the

covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, covenants, new covenant, promise, promises, promised)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:22-25
- Luke 01:72-75
- Luke 22:19-20
- Acts 07:6-8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:4-6
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New**

Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

cross

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, crucified, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Galatians 06:11-13
- John 19:17-18
- Luke 09:23-25
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Philippians 02:5-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called "the Skull" and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you."

- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:22-24
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:33-34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus.played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:09** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power

of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless, blessed, blessing)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 03:14-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- James 03:9-10
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Psalms 109:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

daughter of Zion

Definition:

"Daughter of Zion" is a figurative way of referring to the people of Israel. It is usually used in prophecies.

- In the Old Testament, "Zion" is often used as another name for the city of Jerusalem.
- Both "Zion" and "Jerusalem" are also used to refer to Israel.
- The term "Daughter" is a term of endearment or affection. It is a metaphor for the patience and care that God has for his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this could include "my daughter Israel, from Zion" or "people from Zion, who are like a daughter to me" or "Zion, my dear people Israel."
- It is best to keep the term "Zion" in this expression since it is used many times in the Bible. A note could be included in the translation to explain its figurative meaning and prophetic use.
- It is also better to keep the term "Daughter" in the translation of this expression, as long as it is understood correctly.

(See also: Jerusalem, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Zion)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- John 12:14-15
- Matthew 21:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1323, H6726

day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

Description:

The Old Testament term "day of Yahweh" is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term "day of the Lord" usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the "last day." This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word "day" in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a "time" or "occasion" that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a "pouring out of God's wrath" upon those who do not believe.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "day of Yahweh" could include "time of Yahweh" or "time when Yahweh will punish his enemies" or "time of Yahweh's wrath."
- Other ways to translate "day of the Lord" could include "time of the Lord's judgment" or "time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people."

(See also: day, judgment day, Lord, resurrection, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- 2 Peter 03:10
- 2 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- Acts 02:20-21
- Philippians 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H3117, G2250, G2962

deacon, deacons

Definition:

A deacon is a person who serves in the local church, helping fellow believers with practical needs, such as food or money.

- The word "deacon" is taken directly from a Greek word meaning "servant" or "minister."
- From the time of the early Christians, being a deacon has been a well-defined role and ministry in the Church body.
- For example, in the New Testament, deacons would make sure that whatever money or food that the believers shared would be distributed fairly to the widows among them.
- The term "deacon" could also be translated as "church minister" or "church worker" or "church servant," or some other phrase that shows that the person has been formally appointed to do specific tasks that benefit the local Christian community.

(See also: to minister, ministry,
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery,
maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:8-10
- 1 Timothy 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1249

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: demon-possessed, Satan, false god, false god, angel, angels, archangel, evil, wicked, wickedness,
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
)

Bible References:

- James 02:18-20
- James 03:15-18
- Luke 04:35-37
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 04:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.

- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

demon-possessed

Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:32-34
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 08:16-17
- Matthew 08:33-34

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons in them** were brought to Jesus.
- **32:02** When they reached the other side of the lake, a **demon-possessed** man came running up to Jesus.
- **32:06** The man **with the demon** cried out in a loud voice, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!"
- **32:09** The people from the town came and saw the man who used to **have the demons**.
- **47:03** Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl **possessed by a demon** followed them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1139

disciple, disciples

Definition:

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
- Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the twelve."
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Jesus,
John (the Baptist), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:25-26
- Acts 14:21-22
- John 13:23-25
- Luke 06:39-40
- Matthew 11:1-3
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:62-64

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:08** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline

Definition:

The term "discipline" refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God's will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one's own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "discipline" could be translated as "train and instruct" or "morally guide" or "punish for wrongdoing."
- The noun "discipline" could be translated as "moral training" or "punishment" or "moral correction" or "moral guidance and instruction."

Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:4
- Hebrews 12:4-6
- Proverbs 19:17-18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4148

divine

Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
- In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
- For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
- The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: authority, authorities, false god, glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies, God, judge, judges, judgment, judgments, power, powers)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Romans 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2304, G2999

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, authorities, power, powers)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13-14
- Jude 01:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

ephod

Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:18-19
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Hosea 03:4-5
- Judges 08:27-28
- Leviticus 08:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H641, H642, H646

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms "everlasting" and "eternal" have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term "eternity" refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase "forever and ever" has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term "forever" refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean "a very long time."

- The term "forever and ever" emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase "forever and ever" is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last "forever." This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "eternal" or "everlasting" could include"unending" or "never stopping" or "always continuing."
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" could also be translated as "life that never ends" or "life that continues without stopping" or "the raising up of our bodies to live forever."
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "eternity" could include "existing outside of time" or "unending life" or "life in heaven."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- "Forever" could also be translated by "always" or "never ending."
- The phrase "will last forever" could also be translated as "always exist" or "will never stop" or "will always continue."
- The emphatic phrase "forever and ever" could also be translated as "for always and always" or "not ever ending" or "which never, ever ends."
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as "David's descendant will reign forever" or "a descendant of David will always be reigning."

(See also: David, reign, reigns, reigned, reigning, life, live, lived, lives, living, alive)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

eunuch, eunuchs

Definition:

Usually the term "eunuch" refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings' servants who were set as guards over the women's quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:26-28
- Acts 08:36-38
- Acts 08:39-40
- Isaiah 39:7-8
- Jeremiah 34:17-19
- Matthew 19:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5631, G2134, G2135

evangelist, evangelists

Definition:

An "evangelist" is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of "evangelist" is "someone who preaches the good news."
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God's kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called "evangelists."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "evangelist" could be translated as "someone who preaches the good news" or "teacher of the good news" or "person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)" or "good news proclaimer."

(See also: good news, spirit, spirits, spiritual, gift, gifts)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:3-5
- Ephesians 04:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2099

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, good, goodness, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Timothy 06:9-10
- 3 John 01:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
- "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
- "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy, worship, glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies, boast, boasts, boastful, proud, proudly, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47-49
- Acts 05:29-32
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46-47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:1-2
- Luke 03:18-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:18-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

- The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
- God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."
- Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal."
- The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
- The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying."
- In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, faith, believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:5-7
- Luke 12:45-46
- Luke 16:10-12
- Colossians 01:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- 3 John 01:5-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

faithless, faithlessness

Definition:

The term "faithless" means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "faithless" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "unbelieving" or "disobedient to God" or "not believing."
- The term "faithlessness" could be translated as "unbelief" or "unfaithfulness" or "rebellion against God."

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 09:1-2
- Jeremiah 02:18-19
- Proverbs 02:20-22
- Revelation 21:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: G571

favor, favors, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoratism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor"with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:26-27
- Genesis 41:14-16
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Genesis 50:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
- The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, awesome, Lord, power, powers, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

fellowship

Definition:

In general, the term "fellowship" refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term "fellowship" usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God's Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "fellowship" could include "a sharing together" or "relationship" or "companionship" or "Christian community."

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:3-4
- Acts 02:40-42
- Philippians 01:3-6
- Philippians 02:1-2
- Philippians 03:8-11
- Psalms 055:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2266, H8667, G2842, G2844, G3352, G4790

filled with the Holy Spirit

Definition:

The term "filled with the Holy Spirit" is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God's will.

- The expression "filled with" is an expression that often means "controlled by."
- People are "filled with the Holy Spirit" when they follow the Holy Spirit's leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "empowered by the Holy Spirit" or "controlled by the Holy Spirit." But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as "he was filled with the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "he was living fully by the Spirit's power" or "he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely."
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression "live by the Spirit," but "filled with the Holy Spirit" emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 05:17-18
- Acts 06:8-9
- Luke 01:14-15
- Luke 01:39-41
- Luke 04:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 John 01:7-8
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25

- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

fool, fools, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
- Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:16-18
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:1-3
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 25:7-9
- Proverbs 13:15-16
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt, guilty)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:15-17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:10-11
- Psalms 025:17-19

- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:1-2
- Luke 05:20-21
- Acts 08:20-23
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook

Definition:

The term "forsake" means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been "forsaken" has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people "forsake" God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God "forsakes" people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God's teachings.
- The term "forsaken" can be used in the past tense, as in "he has forsaken you" or as in referring to someone who has "been forsaken."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "abandon" or "neglect" or "give up" or "go away from" or "leave behind," depending on the context.
- To "forsake" God's law could be translated "disobey God's law." This could also be translated as "abandon" or "give up on" or "stop obeying" his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase "be forsaken" can be translated as "be abandoned" or "be deserted."
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

fulfill, fulfilled

Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Christ, to minister, ministry, call, calls, calling, called)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:20-22
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, "See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be **fulfilled**."
- **43:05** "This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"

- **43:07** "This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

Gentile, Gentiles

Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 02:30-32
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

gift, gifts

Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: spirit, spirits, spiritual, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Samuel 11:6-8
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 11:17-18
- Acts 24:17-19
- James 01:17-18
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about

God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:16-18
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- Luke 18:42-43
- Luke 02:8-9
- John 12:27-29
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:16-17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:18-20
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:5-6
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811,

G4888

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8

- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124,

G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 1 John 02:22-23
- 1 John 03:1-3
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 23:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw

Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.

- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures , kingdom, kingdoms, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:1-3
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms "ungodly" and "godless" describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called "ungodliness" or "godlessness."

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, "godless" and "godlessness" may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "the godly" could be translated as "godly people" or "people who obey God." (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."
- The phrase "in a godly manner" could be translated as "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."
- Ways to translate "godliness" could include "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."
- Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."
- The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."
- Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also evil, wicked, wickedness, honor, honors,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

- Job 27:8-10
- Proverbs 11:9-11
- Acts 03:11-12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:6-8
- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Jude 01:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: kingdom, kingdoms,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings,
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14-15
- Philippians 02:22-24
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"
- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.

- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283

good, goodness

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, profit, profits, profitable, unprofitable, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13

- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- James 03:13-14
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God plantedâ€¦the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **08:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:3-4
- Colossians 04:5-6
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:6-7
- John 01:16-18
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: innocent, iniquity, iniquities,
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished,
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:6-7
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:4-6
- Jonah 01:14-16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, "I find no **guilt** in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" Pilate replied, "He is not **guilty**." But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, "He is not **guilty**!"
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Don't you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

Hades, Sheol

Definition:

The terms "Hades" and "Sheol" are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term "Sheol" is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going "down" to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going "up" to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term "Hades" is coupled with the term "death" in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term "Sheol" could be translated as "place of the dead" or "place for dead souls." Some translations translate this as "the pit" or "death," depending on the context.
- The New Testament term "Hades" could also be translated as "place for unbelieving dead souls" or "place of torment for the dead" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
- Some translations keep the words "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly, heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, hell, lake of fire, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 44:27-29
- Jonah 02:1-2
- Luke 10:13-15
- Luke 16:22-23
- Matthew 11:23-24

- Matthew 16:17-18
- Revelation 01:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:16-18
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 15:7-9
- Luke 08:14-15

- Mark 02:5-7
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 22:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- John 03:12-13
- John 03:27-28
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Hebrew, Hebrews

Facts:

The "Hebrews" were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a "Hebrew."

- The term "Hebrew" also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Jewish people" or "Israelites." It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jew, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:14-15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 05:1-4
- John 19:12-13
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G1444, G1445, G1446, G1447

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly,
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly, Hades,
abyss, bottomless pit)

Bible References:

- James 03:5-6
- Luke 12:4-5
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:32-33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them,

and worms will never stop eating them.

- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86, G439, G440, G1067, G3041, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G5020, G5394, G5457

high priest

Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

Translation Suggestions:

- "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, chief priests, priest, priests, priesthood, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:26-28
- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 09:1-2
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32-33
- Luke 03:1-2
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the

high priest to question him.

- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, "Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?"
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

Holy One

Definition:

The term "Holy One" is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase "Holy One of Israel."
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the "Holy One."
- The term "holy one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is "the Holy" (with "One" being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as "One" or "God").
- This term could also be translated as "God, who is holy" or "the Set Apart One."
- The phrase "the Holy One of Israel" could be translated as "the Holy God whom Israel worships" or "the Holy One who rules Israel."
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate "holy."

(See also: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20-21
- 2 Kings 19:20-22
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Isaiah 05:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14-15
- Luke 04:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H376, H6918, G40, G3741

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "the holy place" and "the most holy place" refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The "holy place" was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special "bread of the presence" on it.
- The "most holy place" was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes "holy place" refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "holy place" could also be translated as "room set apart for God" or "special room for meeting God" or "place reserved for God."
- The term "most holy place" could be translated as "room that is the most set apart for God" or "most special room for meeting God."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression "a holy place" could include "a consecrated place" or "a place that God has set apart" or "a place in the temple complex, which is holy" or "a courtyard of God's holy temple."

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, bread, consecrate, consecrated, consecration, court, courts, courtyard, courtyards, curtain, curtains, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, set apart, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:16-18
- Acts 06:12-15
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezra 09:8-9
- Hebrews 09:1-2
- Leviticus 16:17-19
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, spirit, spirits, spiritual, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift, gifts)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:14-17
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of**

God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftensed to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, consecrated, consecration, sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:20-22
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 11:7-10
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:21-23
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 03:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

honor, honors

Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable, glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies, glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies, praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:15-17
- John 04:43-45
- John 12:25-26
- Mark 06:4-6
- Matthew 15:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

hope, hoped, hopes

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term in the original language as "confidence." This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
- The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
- To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
- The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
- The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
- Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: bless, blessed, blessing, confidence, confident, confidently,
good, goodness,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- Acts 24:14-16

- Acts 26:6-8
- Acts 27:19-20
- Colossians 01:4-6
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:12-13
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 12:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

humble, humbles, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
- "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: proud, proudly, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

- James 01:19-21
- James 03:13-14
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 14:10-11
- Luke 18:13-14
- Matthew 18:4-6
- Matthew 23:11-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** "God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy

Definition:

The term "hypocrite" refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term "hypocrisy" refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like "two-faced" that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate "hypocrite" could include "fraud" or "pretender" or "arrogant, deceitful person."
- The term "hypocrisy" could be translated by, "deception" or "fake actions" or "pretending."

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:13-14
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15-16
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, G505, G5272, G5273

image of God, image

Definition:

The term "image" refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase "image of God" is used in different ways, depending on the context.

- At the beginning of time, God created human beings "in his image," that is, "in his likeness." This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
- The Bible teaches that Jesus, God's Son, is "the image of God," that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity God the Son has had all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to Jesus, "image of God" could be translated as "exact likeness of God" or "same essence as God" or "same being as God."
- When referring to human beings, "God created them in his image" could be translated with a phrase that means "God created them to be like him" or "God created them with characteristics like his own."

(See also:
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
, Son of God, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 04:3-4
- Colossians 03:9-11
- Genesis 01:26-27
- Genesis 09:5-7
- James 03:9-10
- Romans 08:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4541, H1544, H2553, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6816, H8403, G504, G179

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase "in Christ" and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include "in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ."
- Possible meanings for the term "in Christ" could include "because you belong to Christ" or "through the relationship you have with Christ" or "based on your faith in Christ."
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word "in" belongs with the verb. For example, "share in Christ" means to "share in" the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To "glory in" Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To "believe in" Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "in Christ" and "in the Lord" (and related phrases) could include:
  - "who belong to Christ"
  - "because you believe in Christ"
  - "because Christ has saved us"
  - "in service to the Lord"
  - "relying on the Lord"
  - "because of what the Lord has done."
- People who "believe in" Christ or who "have faith in" Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like "believe in" or "share in" or "trust in."

(See also: Christ, Lord, Jesus,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, faith)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:4-6
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Timothy 01:1-2
- Galatians 01:21-24

- Galatians 02:17-19
- Philemon 01:4-7
- Revelation 01:9-11
- Romans 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
    - The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."
    - To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
    - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to

receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, heirs, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

iniquity, iniquities

Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
- Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, transgress, trespass, trespasses, trespassed)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

innocent

Definition:

The term "innocent" means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term "innocent" is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking "innocent people."

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term "innocent" can be translated as "not guilty" or "not responsible" or "not to blame" for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as "who have done nothing wrong" or "who are not involved in evil."
- The frequently occurring expression "innocent blood" could be translated as "people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed."
- The expression "shed innocent blood" could be translated as "kill innocent people" or "kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it."
- In the context of someone being killed, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not guilty for the death of."
- When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not" or "not responsible for whether they accept this message."
- When Judas said "I have betrayed innocent blood," he was saying "I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong" or "I have caused the death of a man who was sinless."
- When Pilate said about Jesus "I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man," this could be translated as "I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it."

(See also: guilt, guilty)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:3-4
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- Acts 20:25-27
- Exodus 23:6-9
- Jeremiah 22:17-19

- Job 09:21-24
- Romans 16:17-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

intercede, intercededs, intercession

Definition:

The terms "intercede" and "intercession" refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

- The expressions "make intercession for" and "intercede for" mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
- The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
- A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "intercede" could include "plead for" or "urge (someone) to do something (for someone else)."
- The noun "intercessions" could be translated as "appeals" or "requests" or "urgent prayers."
- The phrase "make intercession for" could be translated as "make requests for the benefit of" or "make an appeal on behalf of" or "ask God to help" or "appeal to God to bless (someone)."

(See also: pray, prayer, prayers, prayed)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 07:25-26
- Isaiah 53:12
- Jeremiah 29:6-7
- Romans 08:26-27
- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6293, G1783, G1793, G5241

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, nations, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 13:23-25
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:28-31
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 27:9-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of _*Israel*_ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** _ ***its own section of the***

Promised Land. Then God gave **_Israel** peace along all its borders.

- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms "jealous" and "jealousy" refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God's strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also "jealous" for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word "envious."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "jealous" could include "strong protective desire" or "possessive desire."
- The term "jealousy" could be translated as "strong protective feeling" or "possessive feeling."
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people's wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms "envious" and "envy" could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy, covet)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20-21
- Deuteronomy 05:9-10
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 36:4-6
- Joshua 24:19-20
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 1 John 04:15-16
- 1 Timothy 01:1-2
- 2 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 02:22-24
- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 10:36-38
- Hebrews 09:13-15

- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Luke 24:19-20
- Matthew 01:20-21
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:08** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:9-11
- John 02:13-14
- Matthew 28:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: decree, decrees, decreed, judge, judgment day, just, law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:13-15
- James 02:1-4
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

judgment day

Definition:

The term"judgment day" refers to a future time when God will judge every person.

- God has made his Son, Jesus Christ, the judge of all people.
- On judgment day, Christ will judge people on the basis of his righteous character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "judgment time" since it could refer to more than one day.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the end time when God will judge all people."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is the name of a special day or time: "Judgment Day" or "Judgment Time."

(See also: judge, judges, judgment, judgments, Jesus, heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, hell, lake of fire)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:10-12
- Luke 11:31
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 10:14-15
- Matthew 12:36-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2962, H3117, H4941, G2250, G2920, G2962

just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or

"partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, guilt, guilty, judge, judges, judgment, judgments,
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness,
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3-5
- Luke 18:6-8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:39-41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:3-4
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 05:3-4

- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

King of the Jews, king of the Jews

Definition:

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
- Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, Jew, Jesus, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, kingdom, kingdoms, kingdom of God, wise men)

Bible References:

- Luke 23:3-5
- Luke 23:36-38
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 27:11-14
- Matthew 27:35-37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:09** Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new **king of the Jews** was born.
- **39:09** Pilate asked Jesus, "Are you the **King of the Jews**?"
- **39:12** The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the **King of the Jews**!"
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "**King of the Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G935, G2453

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, kingdom, kingdoms,
King of the Jews, reign, reigns, reigned, reigning)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23-24
- Colossians 04:10-11
- John 03:3-4
- Luke 07:27-28
- Luke 10:8-9

- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Romans 14:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!"
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**."
- **29:02** Jesus said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants."
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
- "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also:
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins, shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:18-20
- John 01:29-31
- John 01:35-36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3-4

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?"
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world."
- **45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

lament, laments, lamentation

Definition:

The terms "lament" and "lamentation" refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "lament" could be translated as to "deeply mourn" or to "wail in grief" or to "be sorrowful."
- A "lamentation" (or a "lament") could be translated as "loud wailing and weeping" or "deep sorrow" or "sorrowful sobbing" or "mournful moaning."

Bible References:

- Amos 08:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:17-19
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 02:5-6
- Lamentations 02:8-9
- Micah 02:3-5
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term "last days" or "latter days" refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The "last days" are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "last days" can also be translated as "final days" or "end times."
- In some contexts, this could be translated as "end of the world" or "when this world ends."

(See also: day of the Lord, judge, judges, judgment, judgments, turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
, world, worldly)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:1-3
- Isaiah 02:1-2
- James 05:1-3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also:
instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors, Moses, Ten Commandments,
lawful, lawfully, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:5-6
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43

- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Romans 03:19-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, "life" could be translated as "spiritual life" or "eternal life," depending on the context.
- The concept of "spiritual life" could also be translated as "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner

self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Acts 10:42-43
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- John 01:4-5
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 12:22-23
- Matthew 07:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were _*living* _ in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

Facts:

In the Old Testament, "Lord Yahweh" is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term "Lord" is a divine title and "Yahweh" is God's personal name.
- "Yahweh" is also often combined with the term "God" to form "Yahweh God."

Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of "Yahweh" is used for the translation of God's personal name, the terms "Lord Yahweh" and "Yahweh God" can be translated literally. Also consider how the term "Lord" is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as "Yahweh Lord." Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title "Lord" come before or after "Yahweh"?
- "Yahweh God" could also be rendered as "God who is called Yahweh" or "God who is the Living One" or "I am, who is God."
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering "Yahweh" as "Lord" or "LORD," the term "Lord Yahweh" could be translated as "Lord God" or "God who is the Lord." Other possible translations could be, "Master LORD" or "God the LORD."
- The term "Lord Yahweh" *should not* be rendered as "Lord LORD" because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words and it would look very strange.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs, Lord, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:3-4
- 2 Samuel 07:21-23
- Deuteronomy 03:23-25
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Jeremiah 44:26-28
- Judges 06:22-24
- Micah 01:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H430, H3068, G2316, G2962

Lord's Supper

Definition:

The term "Lord's Supper" was used by the apostle Paul to refer to the Passover meal that Jesus ate with his disciples on the night he was arrested by the Jewish leaders.

- During this meal, Jesus broke the Passover bread into pieces and called it his body, which would soon be beaten and killed.
- He called the cup of wine his blood, which would soon be spilled out as he died as a sacrifice for sin.
- Jesus commanded that as often as his followers shared this meal together, they should remember his death and resurrection.
- In his letter to the Corinthians, the apostle Paul also further established the Lord's Supper as a regular practice for believers in Jesus.
- Churches today often use the term "communion" to refer to the Lord's Supper. The term "Last Supper" is also sometimes used.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "the Lord's meal" or "the meal of our Lord Jesus" or "the meal in memory of the Lord Jesus."

(See also: Passover)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1173, G2960

lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

Definition:

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be

used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus,
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:22-23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- Jude 01:5-6
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a

lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

1. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

1. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

2. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have

for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, covenants, new covenant,
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings,
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 04:9-12
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- John 03:16-18
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you

love yourself.

- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

majesty

Definition:

The term "majesty" refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, "majesty" frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- "Your Majesty" is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "kingly greatness" or "royal splendor."
- "Your Majesty" could be translated as something like "your Highness" or "your Excellency" or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Isaiah 02:9-11
- Jude 01:24-25
- Micah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, grain, grains, grainfields, heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:26-27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: compassion, compassionate,
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 19:16-17
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:12-13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27-28
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was **merciful** to him."
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, "No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you."
- **34:09** "But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, powers, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, apostle, apostles, apostleship, sign, signs, proof, reminder)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10

- Acts 04:15-18
- Acts 04:21-22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:57-58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

Most High

Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
- The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
- If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G5310

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: frankincense, learned men)

Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:22-24
- Matthew 02:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G3464, G4666, G4669

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: call, calls, calling, called)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12-14
- 2 Timothy 02:19-21
- Acts 04:5-7
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 09:26-27
- Genesis 12:1-3
- Genesis 35:9-10
- Matthew 18:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Nazirite, Nazirites, Nazirite vow

Facts:

The term "Nazirite" refers to a person who has taken a "Nazirite vow." Mostly men took this vow, but women could also take it.

- A person who took the Nazirite vow agreed to not have any food or drink made from grapes for period that had been agreed upon for the fulfillment of the vow. During this period he was also not to get his hair cut and not go near a dead body.
- When the required length of time had passed, and the vow had been fulfilled, the Nazirite would go to the priest and provide an offering. This would include the cutting and burning of his hair. All other restrictions would also be removed.
- Samson is a well-known man in the Old Testament who was under the Nazirite vow.
- The angel announcing John the Baptist's birth told Zechariah that his son would not drink strong drink, which may indicate that John was under the Nazirite vow.
- According to a passage in the book of Acts the apostle Paul may also have at one time taken this vow, according to one passage in the book of Acts.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: John (the Baptist),
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, Samson,
vow, vows, vowed, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- Acts 18:18-19
- Amos 02:11-12
- Judges 13:3-5
- Numbers 06:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139

parable, parables

Definition:

The term "parable" usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus' comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus' teachings.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:36
- Luke 06:39-40
- Luke 08:4-6
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:1-2
- Matthew 13:3-6
- Matthew 13:10-12
- Matthew 13:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1819, H4912, G3850, G3942

Passover

Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:1-2
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of

how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.

- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

pastor, pastors

Definition:

The term "pastor" is literally the same word as "shepherd." It is used as a title for someone who is the spiritual leader for a group of believers.

- In English Bible versions, "pastor" only occurs one time, in the book of Ephesians. It is the same word as is translated as "shepherd" elsewhere.
- In some languages, the word for "pastor" is the same as the word for "shepherd."
- It is also the same word as is used to refer to Jesus as the "good Shepherd."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word for "shepherd" in the project language.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "shepherding Christian leader."

(See also: shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding, ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7462, G4166

Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

Facts:

The "Festival of Weeks" was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as "Pentecost."

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called "Pentecost" which has "fifty" as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: festival, festivals, firstfruits,
harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters, Holy Spirit,
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Acts 02:1-4
- Acts 20:15-16
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2282, H7620, G4005

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term "people of God" refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says "my people" he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God's people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, "people of God" especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
- When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
- Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
- Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are "perishing" are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that "perish" means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die eternally" or "be punished in hell" or "be destroyed."
- Make sure that the translation of "perish" can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:22-23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

Pharisee, Pharisees

Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: council, councils, Jewish leaders, law, Sadducee)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:4-5
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:43-44
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Matthew 12:38-40
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

power, powers

Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
- An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Jude 01:24-25
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Philippians 03:20-21
- Psalm 080:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of

God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God."

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:8-10
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:23-26
- Colossians 04:2-4
- John 17:9-11
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, "Hear us, O Baal!"
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent

time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.

- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

predestine, predestined

Definition:

The terms "predestine" and "predestined" refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

- This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
- Sometimes the word "foreordain" is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "predestine" could also be translated as "decide before" or "decide ahead of time."
- The term "predestined" could be translated as "decided long ago" or "planned ahead of time" or "decided beforehand."
- A phrase such as "predestined us" could be translated as "decided long ago that we" or "already decided ahead of time that we."
- Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term "foreknew."

(See also: foreknew)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4309

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

promise, promises, promised

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, covenants, new covenant,
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by, vow, vows, vowed)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:8-10
- James 01:12-13
- Numbers 30:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."Â
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has

not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Promised Land

Facts:

The term "Promised Land" only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Promised Land" can be translated as the "land that God said he would give to Abraham" or "land that God promised to Abraham" or "land God promised to his people" or "land of Canaan."
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of "the land God promised."

(See also: Canaan, promise, promises, promised)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.

- **20:09** This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer, false god, false prophet, fulfill, fulfilled, law, vision, visions, envision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:24-26
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

propitiation

Definition:

The term "propitiation" refers to a sacrifice that is made to satisfy or fulfill the justice of God and to appease his wrath.

- The offering of the sacrificial blood of Jesus Christ is the propitiation to God for mankind's sins.
- Jesus' death on the cross appeased God's wrath against sin. This provided a way for God to look on people with favor and offer them eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "appeasement" or "causing God to forgive sins and grant favor to people."
- The word "atonement" is close in meaning to "propitiation." It is important to compare how these two terms are used.

(See also: atonement, atone, atones, atoned, everlasting, forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:1-3
- 1 John 04:9-10
- Romans 03:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2434, G2435

psalm, psalms

Definition:

The term "psalm" refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

- The Old Testament Book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
- The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
- Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
- In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.

(See also: David, faith,
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
, Moses, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:32-34
- Acts 13:35-37
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Luke 20:41-44

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2158, H2167, H2172, H4210, G5567, G5568

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."

(See also: atonement, atone, atones, atoned,
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:5-8
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 02:22-24
- Revelation 14:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

Rabbi

Definition:

The term "Rabbi" literally means "my master" or "my teacher."

- It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God's laws.
- Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called "Rabbi" by their disciples.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this term could include "My Master" or "My Teacher" or "Honorable Teacher" or "Religious Teacher." Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
- The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
- Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
- Also consider how "Rabbi" is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: teacher, teachers, Teacher)

Bible References:

- John 01:49-51
- John 06:24-25
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 23:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4461

ransom, ransomed

Definition:

The term "ransom" refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to "ransom" means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of "buy back" is similar to the meaning of "redeem."
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called "redemption" in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "ransom" could also be translated as to "pay to release" or to "pay a price to free" or to "buy back."
- The phrase to "pay a ransom" could be translated as to "pay the price (of freedom)" or to "pay the penalty (to free people)" or to "make the required payment."
- The noun "ransom" could be translated as "a buying back" or "a penalty paid" or "the price paid" (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a "ransom" and a "redemption" have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from "atonement."

(See also: atonement, atone, atones, atoned,
redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:5-7
- Isaiah 43:2-3
- Job 06:21-23
- Leviticus 19:20-22
- Matthew 20:25-28
- Psalms 049:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G487, G3083

reconcile, reconciles, reconciled, reconciliation

Definition:

To "reconcile" and "reconciliation" refer to "make peace" between people who were formerly enemies of each other. "Reconciliation" is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God's enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus' sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "reconcile" could be translated as "make peace" or "restore good relations" or "cause to be friends."
- The term "reconciliation" could be translated as "restoring good relations" or "making peace" or "causing peaceful relating."

(See also: peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:18-19
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 05:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2398 , H3722 , G604 , G1259 , G2433 , G2643, G2644

redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

To "redeem" and "redemption" refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. "Redemption" is the action of doing that. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "the buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty, ransom, ransomed)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Luke 02:36-38
- Ruth 02:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629,

G1805, G3084, G3085

remnant

Definition:

The term "remnant" literally refers to people or things that are "remaining" or "left over" from a larger amount or group.

- Often a "remnant" refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a "remnant" of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term "remnant" implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as "the remnant of this people" could be translated as "the rest of these people" or "the people who remain faithful" or "the people who are left."
- The "whole remnant of people" could be translated by "all the rest of the people" or "the remaining people."

Bible References:

- Acts 15:15-18
- Amos 09:11-12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:7-8
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- Micah 04:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

repent, repents, repented, repentance

Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
- In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
- Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
- Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned,
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning,
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:29-32
- Luke 24:45-47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, "**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- **42:08** ""It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. "
- **44:05** "So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

restore, restores, restored, restoration

Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- A broken relationship that is restored has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- When property is "restored," it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- Acts 03:21-23
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:8-10
- Matthew 12:13-14
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

resurrection

Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
- The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: life, live, lived, lives, living, alive,
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly,
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:12-14
- 1 Peter 03:21-22
- Hebrews 11:35-38
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27-28
- Luke 20:34-36
- Matthew 22:23-24
- Matthew 22:29-30
- Philippians 03:8-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book "Revelation" is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
- The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision, visions, envision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:3-5
- Galatians 01:11-12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26-27
- Philippians 03:15-16
- Revelation 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
- Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
- The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power." (See: parallelism)
- The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also:
accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations, evil, wicked, wickedness, honor, honors, might, mighty, mightier, mightily, punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished, rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:32-33
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- Lamentations 02:3-4
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Psalms 044:3-4
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."

- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, good, goodness, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, integrity, just, law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, law,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, pure, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Matthew 06:1-2

- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Colossians 03:22-25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

Sabbath

Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest, rests, rested, resting, restless)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:5-6
- Leviticus 19:1-4
- Luke 13:12-14
- Mark 02:27-28
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in

six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me."

- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

Sadducee, Sadducees

Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: chief priests, council, councils, high priest, hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy, Jewish leaders, Pharisee, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:1-4
- Acts 05:17-18
- Luke 20:27-28
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 16:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4523

saint, saints

Definition:

The term "saints" literally means "holy ones" and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title "saint," but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "saints" could include "holy ones" or "holy people" or "holy believers in Jesus" or "set apart ones."
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:9-10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "sanctify" can be translated as "set apart" or "make holy" or "purify."
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God's service. Often the word "consecrate" is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is "consecrate," this term could be translated as "dedicate someone (or something) to God's service."
- Depending on the context, the phrase "your sanctification" could be translated as "making you holy" or "setting you apart (for God)" or "what makes you holy."

(See also: consecrate, consecrated, consecration, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, set apart)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6942, G37, G38

sanctuary

Definition:

The term "sanctuary" literally means "holy place" and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sanctuary" was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the "holy place" and "most holy place" were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a "sanctuary" or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of "holy place" or "place that is set apart."
- Depending on the context, the term "sanctuary" could be translated as "holy place" or "sacred building" or "God's holy dwelling place" or "holy place of protection" or "sacred place of safety."
- The phrase "shekel of the sanctuary" could be translated as "kind of shekel given for the tabernacle" or "shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple."
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, Holy Spirit, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, set apart, tabernacle,
tax, taxes, taxed, taxing, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector, tax collectors,, temple,)

Bible References:

- Amos 07:12-13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Hebrews 08:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Psalms 078:67-69

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4720, H6944, G39

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, evil, wicked, wickedness, kingdom of God, tempt, temptation)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Acts 13:9-10
- Job 01:6-8
- Mark 08:33-34
- Zechariah 03:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver,
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished,
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Genesis 47:25-26

- Psalms 080:1-3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30-32
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:20-21
- Romans 01:16-17
- Romans 10:8-10
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- Philippians 01:28-30
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

Savior, savior

Facts:

The term "savior" refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, "Savior" is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, "Savior" should be translated with a word that is related to the words "save" and "salvation."
- Ways to translate this term could include "the One who saves" or "God, who saves" or "who delivers from danger" or "who rescues from enemies" or "Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin."

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- 2 Peter 02:20-22
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:46-47
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3467, G4990

scribe, scribes

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:45-47
- Mark 01:21-22
- Mark 02:15-16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28-29
- Matthew 12:38-40
- Matthew 13:51-53

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

set apart

Definition:

The term "set apart" means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to "set apart" some person or thing means to make it "set apart."

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is "set apart" for service to God is "dedicated to" fulfilling God's will.
- One meaning of the term "holy" is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To "sanctify" someone means to set apart that person for God's service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to "set apart" could include to "specially select" or to "separate from among you" or to "take aside to do a special task."
- To "be set apart" could be translated as "be separated (from)" or "be specially appointed (for)."

(See also: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification, appoint, appoints, appointed)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

sign, signs, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- "Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs, apostle, apostles, apostleship, Christ, covenant, covenants, new covenant, circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- John 02:17-19

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, evil, wicked, wickedness, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Son of God, Son

Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:9-10
- Acts 09:20-22
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Hebrews 04:14-16
- John 03:16-18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Revelation 02:18-19
- Romans 08:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**."
- **24:09** God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**."
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are **the Son of God**."
- **37:05** Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God**!"
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

- In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
- Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, son, sons, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:54-56
- Daniel 07:13-14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:3-5
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

son, sons

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: Azariah,
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

sons of God

Definition:

The term "sons of God" is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term "sons of God" refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God" since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term "sons of God" that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- In the New Testament, the term "sons of God" refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God" since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between human sons and their father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- The title "Son of God" is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God's only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "sons of God" refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as "children of God."
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate "sons of God" could include "angels," "spirit beings," "supernatural creatures," or "demons."
- Also see the link for "son."

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, son, sons, Son of God, rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- Genesis 06:1-3
- Genesis 06:4
- Job 01:6-8
- Romans 08:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1121, G2316, G5043, G5207

soul, souls

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means,"I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:7-9
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:40-42
- Genesis 49:5-6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:19-21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:46-47
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Psalms 019:7-8
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."

- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, Holy Spirit, soul, souls)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

stone, stones, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment, crime, die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly, Lystra, testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:5-7
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34-35
- Luke 20:5-6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

synagogue

Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also:
cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy, Jerusalem, Jew, pray, prayer, prayers, prayed, temple, word of God, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:57-59
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: altar, altars, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:44-46
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636,

G4638

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, court, courts, courtyard, courtyards, Zion, house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:1-3
- Acts 03:7-8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:45-46
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, Satan, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, test, tests, tested)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:14-16
- James 01:12-13
- Luke 04:1-2
- Luke 11:3-4
- Matthew 26:39-41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

test, tests, tested

Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: tempt, temptation)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:19-22
- Acts 15:10-11
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Isaiah 07:13-15
- James 01:12-13
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:9-11

- Psalm 026:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."

- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
- To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something" or to "experience something happen."

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, guilty, judge, judges, judgment, judgments, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Micah 06:3-5
- Matthew 26:59-61
- Mark 01:43-44
- John 01:6-8
- John 03:31-33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 13:30-31
- Romans 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:11-12
- Revelation 12:11-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is

your judgment?"

- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

tetrarch

Definition:

The term "tetrarch" refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

- The title "tetrarch" means "one of four joint rulers."
- Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
- The kingdom of of Herod "the Great," who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as "tetrarchs," or "rulers of a fourth."
- Each division had one or more smaller parts called "provinces," such as Galilee or Samaria.
- "Herod the tetrarch" is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as "Herod Antipas."
- The term "tetrarch" could also be translated as "regional governor" or "provincial ruler" or "ruler" or "governor."

(See also:
govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls, Herod Antipas, province, provinces, provincial, Rome,
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled)

Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 09:7-9
- Matthew 14:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5075, G5076

the twelve, the eleven

Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
- "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, disciple, disciples)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:2-4
- Luke 09:1-2
- Luke 18:31-33
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1427, G1733

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to "serve" or to "work for God."
- The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: serve, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

transgress, transgresses, transgression

Definition:

The term "transgression" refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To "transgress" is to commit a "transgression."

- Figuratively, to "transgress" can also be described as to "cross a line," that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms "transgression," "sin," "iniquity," and "trespass" all include the meaning of acting against God's will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "trangress" could be translated as to "sin" or to "disobey" or to "rebel."
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, trespass, trespasses, trespassed, iniquity, iniquities)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

trespass, trespasses, trespassed

Definition:

To "trespass" means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A "trespass" is the action of "trespassing."

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms "sin," and "transgress," especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like "cross the line" that could be used to translate "trespass."
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as "transgress" and "sin."

(See also: disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, iniquity, iniquities, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Ephesians 02:1-3
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:16-17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, fulfill, fulfilled, obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient , prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, understand, understands, understood, understanding)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 3 John 01:5-8

- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:4-6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:17-18
- James 03:13-14
- James 05:19-20
- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is _*true* _ that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the _*true* _ God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, confidence, confident, confidently, faith, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.

- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
- In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, feasts, feasting, Passover, enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3-4
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4682, G106

vow, vows, vowed

Definition:

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: promise, promises, promised,
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:22-24
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

will of God

Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

- God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

Translation Suggestions:

- The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term "worldly wisdom" is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
- "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
- It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also:
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:2-4
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Isaiah 19:11-12
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Matthew 07:24-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.

- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

woe

Definition:

The term "woe" refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression "woe to" is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word "woe" is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says "woe is me" or "woe to me" is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "woe" could also be translated as "great sorrow" or "sadness" or "calamity" or "disaster."
- Other ways to translate the expression "Woe to (name of city)" could include, "How terrible it will be for (name of city)" or "The people in (that city) will be severely punished" or "Those people will suffer greatly."
- The expression, "Woe is me!" or "Woe to me!" could be translated as "How sad I am!" or "I am so sad!" or "How terrible this is for me!"
- The expression "Woe to you" could also be translated as "You will suffer terribly" or "You will experience terrible troubles."

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24-25
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, true, truth, truths, word, words, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1-3
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11-13
- John 05:39-40
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 06:4-7
- Ephesians 01:13-14
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "works," "deeds," and "acts" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term "work" refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person's "work" can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as "working."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- The term "work" can also have the broader meaning of "service" or "ministry." For example, the expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as, "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful, Holy Spirit, miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:11-12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

world, worldly

Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also:
corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility,
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, Rome,
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 John 04:4-6
- 1 John 05:4-5
- John 01:29-31
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

worship

Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy, honor, honors)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:5-7
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods."
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, '**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"

- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important. The term "worthless" means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term "unworthy" and the term "worthless" have related, but different meanings. To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
- The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
- The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
- The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
- Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
- The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: honor, honors)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:23-25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:30-32
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:18-19
- Mark 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7939, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: judge, judges, judgment, judgments, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Romans 01:18-19
- Romans 05:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

Yahweh

Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name "Yahweh" comes from the word that means, to "be" or to "exist."
- Possible meanings of "Yahweh" include, "he is" or "I am" or "the one who causes to be."
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, "Yahweh," as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun "I" or "me," the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs, Lord, Moses, reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of heaven, host of the heavens, Lord of hosts

Definition:

The terms "Yahweh of hosts" and "God of hosts" are titles that express God's authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term "host" or "hosts" is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to "host of the heavens" refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, "Lord of hosts" means the same as "Yahweh of hosts" but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word "Yahweh" is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "Yahweh of hosts" could include, "Yahweh, who rules all the angels" or "Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels" or "Yahweh, the ruler of all creation."
- The phrase "of hosts" in the terms "God of hosts" and "Lord of hosts" would be translated the same way as in the phrase "Yahweh of hosts" above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term "Yahweh" and prefer to use the capitalized word, "LORD" instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term "LORD of hosts" would be used in the Old Testament for "Yahweh of hosts."

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, authority, authorities, God, lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs, Lord, Lord Yahweh Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Zechariah 13:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H3068, H6635

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
- The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
- The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple" or "fervent desire to take care of your house."

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:30-31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3-5
- Galatians 04:17-18
- Isaiah 63:15-16
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:6-7
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term "Zion" or "Mount Zion" referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, "Zion" and "Mount Zion" became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: metonymy)
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the "City of David." This is different from David's hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term "Zion" is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God's spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, David, Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- Amos 01:1-2
- Jeremiah 51:34-35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6726

Names

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest, priests, priesthood priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, priests, priesthood, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:5-7
- Numbers 16:44-46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

Abel

Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- Genesis 04:1-2
- Genesis 04:8-9
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H01893, G6

Abiathar

Definition:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: Zadok, Saul (OT), David, Solomon, Adonijah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- 1 Kings 01:7-8
- 1 Kings 02:22-23
- 2 Samuel 17:15-16
- Mark 02:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H54, G8

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- Luke 01:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H29, G7

Abimelech

Facts:

Abimelech was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

- Abraham deceived King Abimelech by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
- Abraham and Abimelech made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
- Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelech and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
- King Abimelech rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
- Another man by the name of Abimelech was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. Some translations may use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelech.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Beersheba, Gerar, Gideon, Jotham, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 11:21
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 20:4-5
- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 26:9-11
- Judges 09:52-54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H40

Abner

Definition:

Abner was a cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:26-28
- 1 Kings 02:5-6
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 2 Samuel 03:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H74

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:6-9
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- James 02:21-24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world

would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Absalom

Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Geshur, Amnon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:5-6
- 2 Samuel 15:1-2
- 2 Samuel 17:1-4
- 2 Samuel 18:18
- Psalm 003:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H53

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly, descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, Eve, image of God, life, live, lived, lives, living, alive)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:13-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- Genesis 05:1-2
- Genesis 11:5-7
- Luke 03:36-38
- Romans 05:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:09** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **01:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **02:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **02:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:08** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, G76

Adonijah

Definition:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

- Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
- God, however, had promised that David's son Solomon would be king., so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was made king.
- When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, Solomon)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: G138

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Baal, Elijah, Jezebel, kingdom of Israel, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Kings 09:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:03** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H256

Ahasuerus

Facts:

Ahasuerus was a king who ruled over the ancient kingdom of Persia for twenty years.

- This was during the time the exiled Jews were living in Babylonia, which had come under Persian rule.
- Another name for this king may have been Xerxes.
- After sending away his queen in a fit of anger, King Ahasuerus later chose a Jewish woman named Esther to be his new wife and queen.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Esther, Ethiopia, exile, exiles, exiled, Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:1-2
- Esther 10:1-2
- Ezra 04:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H325

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 01:1-2
- Isaiah 01:1
- Isaiah 07:3-4
- Matthew 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H271

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Jehu, Ahab, Jeroboam, Joash)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:39-40
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Kings 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H274

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Baasha, Shiloh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H281

Ai

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, Jericho)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Joshua 08:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5857

Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites

Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: synecdoche)
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, David, Esau, Negev, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:42-43
- 2 Samuel 01:8-10
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Numbers 14:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

Amaziah

Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Joash, Edom)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Chronicles 04:34-38
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Kings 14:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H558

Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Facts:

The "people of Ammon" or the "Ammonites" were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term "Ammonitess" refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as "Ammonite woman."
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, cursed, curses, cursing, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Genesis 19:36-38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:26-28
- Zephaniah 02:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

Amnon

Facts:

Amnon was the oldest son of King David. His mother was King David's wife Ahinoam.

- Amnon raped his half-sister Tamar, who was also Absalom's sister.
- Because of this, Absalom plotted against Amnon and had him killed.

(See also: David, Absalom)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Samuel 13:1-2
- 2 Samuel 13:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H550

Amorite, Amorites

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:9-10
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

Amos

Facts:

Amos was an Israelite prophet who lived during the time of King Uzziah of Judah.

- Before being called as a prophet, Amos was originally a shepherd and fig farmer living in the kingdom of Judah.
- Amos prophesied against the prosperous northern kingdom of Israel regarding their unjust treatment of people.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: fig, figs, Judah, kingdom of Israel, shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- Amos 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5986

Amoz

Facts:

Amoz was the father of the prophet Isaiah.

- The only times he is mentioned in the Bible are when Isaiah is identified as the "son of Amoz."
- This name is different from the name of the prophet Amos and should be spelled differently.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Amos, Isaiah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:1-2
- Isaiah 37:1-2
- Isaiah 37:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H531

Andrew

Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, disciple, disciples, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40-42
- Mark 01:16-18
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G406

Annas

Facts:

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

- Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office, so Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: high priest, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:22-24
- Luke 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G452

Antioch

Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

- The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called "Christians." The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
- The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn't have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
- Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also:Barnabas, Colossae, John Mark, Paul, province, provinces, provincial, Rome, Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 11:25-26
- Galatians 02:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: G491

Apollos

Facts:

Apollos was a Jew from the city of Alexandria in Egypt who had a special ability in teaching people about Jesus.

- Apollos was well educated in the Hebrew Scriptures and was a gifted speaker.
- He was instructed by two Christians in Ephesus named Aquila and Priscilla.
- Paul emphasized that he and Apollos, as well as other evangelists and teachers, were working toward the same goal of helping people to believe in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aquila, Ephesus, Priscilla, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:12-13
- 1 Corinthians 16:10-12
- Acts 18:24-26
- Titus 03:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: G625

Aquila

Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

- Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy, for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius, forced all Jews to leave Rome.
- After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
- They worked as tentmakers with Paul and also helped him with his missionary work.
- Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Apollos, Corinth, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 04:19-22
- Acts 18:1-3
- Acts 18:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G207

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term "Arabah" often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The "Sea of the Arabah" could also be translated as "sea located in the Arabah desert region." This sea is often referred to as the "Salt Sea" or the "Dead Sea."
- The term "arabah" can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, Sea of Reeds, Jordan River, Canaan, Salt Sea, Egypt)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:28-29
- Jeremiah 02:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

Arabia, Arabian, Arabians

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term "Arabian" is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham's son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Esau, Galatia, Ishmael, Shem, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 02:8-11
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 02:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic

Definition:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic." Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
- The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
- The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- 2 Samuel 08:5-6
- Amos 01:5
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:11-12
- Psalm 060:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H758, H763, G689

Ararat

Facts:

In the Bible, "Ararat" is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

- The "land of Ararat" was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
- Ararat is best known as the name of the mountain that Noah's ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
- In modern times, a mountain called "Mount Ararat" is often thought to be the location of the "mountains of Ararat" in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:35-37
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Isaiah 37:38
- Jeremiah 51:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H780

Artaxerxes

Facts:

Artaxerxes was a king who reigned over the Persian empire from about 464 to 424 BC.

- During Artaxerxes' reign, the Israelites from Judah were in exile in Babylon, which was under the control of Persia at that time.
- Artaxerxes allowed Ezra the priest and other Jewish leaders to leave Babylon and go back to Jerusalem to teach the Israelites the Law of God.
- Later during this time, Artaxerxes also allowed his cupbearer Nehemiah to return to Jerusalem to lead the Jews in rebuilding the walls surrounding the city.
- Because Babylon was under the rule of Persia, Artaxerxes was sometimes called the "king of Babylon."
- Note that Artaxerxers is not the same person as Xerxes (Ahasuerus).

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, cupbearer, cupbearers, Ezra, Nehemiah, Persia)

Bible References:

- Ezra 04:7-8
- Ezra 07:1-5
- Nehemiah 02:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H783

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:14-16
- 1 Kings 15:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- Jeremiah 41:8-9
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H609

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, harp, harps, harpist, harpists, lute, lyre, lyres, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, psalm, psalms, trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 02:7-8
- Psalm 050:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H623

Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Joppa, Philip, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:1-3
- Acts 08:39-40
- Amos 01:8
- Joshua 15:45-47
- Zechariah 09:5-7

{{tag>publish ktlink}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called "Asher."

- Asher's mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means "happy" or "blessed."
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:12-13
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H836

Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. "Ashtoreth" may be another name for "Asherah," or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term "Asherah poles" refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah's husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: false god, Baal, Gideon,
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- 2 Kings 21:1-3
- Isaiah 27:9
- Judges 03:7-8
- Micah 05:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H842, H6252, H6253

Ashkelon

Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

- Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
- Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Canaan, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Philistines, Mediterranean)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:17-18
- Amos 01:8
- Jeremiah 25:19-21
- Joshua 13:2-3
- Judges 01:18-19
- Zechariah 09:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H831

Asia

Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Rome, Paul, Ephesus)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 16:6-8
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Romans 16:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G773

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17-18
- Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

Athaliah

Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

- Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
- When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
- But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. After Athaliah had ruled the land for six years, she was killed and Joash became king.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaziah, Jehoram, Joash, Omri)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Kings 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721

Azariah

Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, Jeremiah, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:36-38
- 1 Kings 04:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 15:1-2
- Daniel 01:6-7
- Jeremiah 43:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5838

Baal

Facts:

"Baal" means "lord" or "master" and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had "Baal" as part of their names, such as "Baal of Peor." Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as "the Baals."
- Some people had names that included the word "Baal" in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God's prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Asherah, Elijah, false god, prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Samuel 07:3-4
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Judges 02:11-13
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!"
- **19:07** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, "Hear us, O **Baal**!"

- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1120, G896

Baasha

Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Asa, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:16-17
- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Jeremiah 41:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1201

Babel

Facts:

Babel was a chief city in a region called Shinar in the southern part of Mesopotamia. Shinar was later called Babylonia.

- The city of Babel was founded by Ham's great-grandson, Nimrod, who ruled the region of Shinar.
- The people of Shinar became proud and decided to build a tower high enough to reach heaven. This later became known as the "Tower of Babel."
- Because the people building the tower refused to spread out as God had commanded, he confused their languages so that they could not understand one another. This forced them to move away to live in many different places across the earth.
- The root meaning of the word for "Babel" is "confusion," named for when God confused the people's language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Ham, Mesopotamia)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:8-10
- Genesis 11:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H894

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)
- In the New Testament, the term "Babylon" is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase "Babylon the Great" or "great city of Babylon" refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Matthew 01:9-11
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the

kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, blessed, blessing, Canaan, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, donkey, mule, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Revelation 02:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

Barabbas

Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Pilate, Rome)

Bible References:

- John 18:38-40
- Luke 23:18-19
- Mark 15:6-8
- Matthew 27:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G912

Barnabas

Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christian, Cyprus, good news, Levite, Paul)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:36-37
- Acts 11:25-26
- Acts 13:1-3
- Acts 15:33-35
- Colossians 04:10-11
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Galatians 02:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:08** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **46:09** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G921

Bartholomew

Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, good news, Holy Spirit, miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs, Pentecost, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G918

Baruch

Facts:

Baruch is the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Baruch (son of Zabbal) worked with Nehemiah to repair the walls of Jerusalem.
- Also during the time of Nehemiah, another Baruch (son of Kol-Hozeh) was one of the leaders who settled in Jerusalem after its walls were restored.
- A different Baruch (son of Neriah) was an assistant to the prophet Jeremiah, who helped him with various practical tasks such as writing down the messages God gave to Jeremiah and then reading them to the people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, disciples, Jeremiah, Jerusalem, Nehemiah, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 32:10-12
- Jeremiah 36:4-6
- Jeremiah 43:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1263

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called "Golan" was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, oak, oaks, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- Amos 04:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

Bathsheba

Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

- David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
- When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
- David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
- God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
- Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, Solomon. Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:4-5
- 1 Kings 01:11-12
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:10** One day, when all of David's soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he got up from an afternoon nap and saw a beautiful woman bathing. Her name was **Bathsheba**.
- **17:11** A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.
- **17:12** **Bathsheba's** husband, a man named Uriah, was one of David's best soldiers.
- **17:13** After Uriah was killed, David married **Bathsheba**.
- **17:14** Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him Solomon.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1339

Beelzebul

Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, "Beelzebub."

- This name literally means "lord of flies" which means, "ruler over demons." But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
- It could also be translated as "Beelzebul the devil" to make it clear who is being referred to.
- This name is related to the name of the false god "Baal-zebub" of Ekron.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, Ekron, Satan)

Bible References:

- Luke 11:14-15
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 12:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G954

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means "well of the oath." It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech's men for seizing control of one of Abraham's wells.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Abraham, Hagar, Ishmael, Jerusalem, oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by)

===== Bible References:=====

- 1 Samuel 03:19-21
- 2 Samuel 17:11-12
- Genesis 21:14-16
- Genesis 21:31-32
- Genesis 46:1-4
- Nehemiah 11:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H884

Benaiah

Definition:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: Asaph, Jehoiada, Levite, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:34-38
- 1 Kings 01:7-8
- 2 Samuel 23:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1141

Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

Berea

Facts:

In New Testament times, Berea (or Beroea) was a prosperous Greek city in southeast Macedonia, about 80 kilometers south of Thessalonica.

- Paul and Silas fled to the city of Berea after their fellow Christians helped them escape from certain Jews who had caused trouble for them in Thessalonica.
- When the people living in Berea heard Paul preach, they researched the Scriptures to confirm that what he was telling them was true.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Macedonia, Paul, Silas, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- Acts 17:10-12
- Acts 17:13-15
- Acts 20:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: G960

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ark of the covenant, Canaan, Jerusalem, Joshua, Levite, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:7-10
- 1 Samuel 06:7-9
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 01:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

Bethany

Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jericho, Jerusalem, Lazarus, Martha, Mary (sister of Martha), Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- John 01:26-28
- Luke 24:50-51
- Mark 11:1-3
- Matthew 21:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G963

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, altar, altars, Jacob, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1-3
- Hosea 10:14-15
- Judges 01:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: Caleb, David, Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16-20
- John 07:40-42
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:06** "The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem**!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H672, H1035, G965

Bethuel

Facts:

Bethuel was the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- Bethuel was the father of Rebekah and Laban.
- There was also a town called Bethuel, which may have been located in southern Judah, not far from the town of Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Beersheba, Laban, Nahor, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:29-31
- Genesis 28:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1328

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who was the husband of Ruth, the great grandfather of King David, and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- Boaz lived during the time when there were judges in Israel.
- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz "redeemed" Naomi's widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.
- He is seen as a picture of how Jesus rescued and redeemed us from sin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Moab, redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer, Ruth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:9-12
- 2 Chronicles 03:15-17
- Luke 03:30-32
- Matthew 01:4-6
- Ruth 02:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1162

Caesar

Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
- When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, Paul, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:6-8
- Luke 02:1-3
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:1-2
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:15-17
- Philippians 04:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2541

Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

- These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
- The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
- The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
- Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
- Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Caesar, Gentile, the sea, Carmel, Mount Hermon, Rome, Tarsus)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:28-30
- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 25:1-3
- Acts 25:13-16
- Mark 08:27-28
- Matthew 16:13-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2542, G5376

Caiaphas

Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Annas, high priest)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:12-14
- Luke 03:1-2
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2533

Cain

Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:11-12
- Genesis 04:1-2
- Genesis 04:8-9
- Genesis 04:13-15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G2535

Caleb

Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Hebron, Joshua)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:13-16
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 01:11-13
- Numbers 32:10-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!"
- **14:08** "Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
  so that they could live at peace in that land.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3612, H3614

Cana

Definition:

Cana was a village or town in the province of Galilee, located about nine miles north of Nazareth.

- Cana was the hometown of Nathanael, one of the Twelve.
- Jesus attended a wedding feast in Cana and performed his first miracle there when he turned water into wine.
- Some time after that, Jesus came back to Cana and met an official there from Capernaum who requested healing for his son.

(See also: Capernaum, Galilee, the twelve)

Bible References:

- John 02:1-2
- John 04:46-47

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2580

Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18-19
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Genesis 47:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G2581, G5478

Capernaum

Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

- Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
- Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
- Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
- Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- John 02:12
- Luke 04:31-32
- Luke 07:1
- Mark 01:21-22
- Mark 02:1-2
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2584

Carmel, Mount Carmel

Facts:

"Mount Carmel" refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called "Carmel" located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal's sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn't just a single mountain, "Mount Carmel" could be translated as, "mountain on the Carmel mountain range" or "Carmel mountain range."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Baal, Elijah, Judah, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 1 Samuel 15:12-13
- Jeremiah 46:18-19
- Micah 07:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3760, H3761, H3762

Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."
- In the book of Daniel, the term "Chaldean" also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:4-5
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

Cilicia

Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

- The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
- Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
- Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Paul, Stephen, Tarsus)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 15:39-41
- Acts 27:3-6
- Galatians 01:21-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2791

city of David

Facts:

The term "city of David" is another name for both Jerusalem and Bethlehem.

- Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
- Bethlehem is where David was born.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, Bethlehem, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 2 Samuel 05:6-7
- Isaiah 22:8-9
- Luke 02:4-5
- Nehemiah 03:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, H5892, G1138, G4172

Colossae, Colossians

Facts:

In New Testament times, Colossae was a city located in the Roman province of Phrygia, an area of land that is now southwestern Turkey. The Colossians were the people who lived in Colossae.

- Located about 100 miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea, Colossae was on an important trade route between the city of Ephesus and the Euphrates River.
- While in prison in Rome, Paul wrote a letter to the "Colossians" to correct false teachings among the believers at Colossae.
- When he wrote this letter, Paul had not visited the church at Colossae, but had heard about the believers there from his coworker, Epaphras.
- Epaphras was probably the Christian worker who started the church at Colossae.
- The book of Philemon was a letter by Paul addressed to a slave owner in Colossae.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ephesus, Paul)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2857, G2858

Corinth, Corinthians

Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

- Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
- The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
- On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
- Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
- Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Apollos, Timothy, Titus)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 01:23-24
- 2 Timothy 04:19-22
- Acts 18:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2881, G2882

Cornelius

Facts:

Cornelius was a Gentile, or non-Jewish man, who was a military officer in the Roman army.

- He prayed regularly to God and was very generous in giving to the poor.
- When Cornelius and his family heard the apostle Peter explain the gospel, they became believers in Jesus.
- The people of Cornelius' household were the first non-Jewish people to become believers.
- This showed Jesus' followers that he had come to save all people, including Gentiles.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Gentile,
good news, Greek, centurion, centurions)

Bible References:

- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 10:7-8
- Acts 10:17-18
- Acts 10:22-23
- Acts 10:24
- Acts 10:25-26
- Acts 10:30-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2883

Crete, Cretan, Cretans

Facts:

Crete is an island that is located off the southern coast of Greece. A "Cretan" is someone who lives on this island.

- The apostle Paul traveled to the island of Crete during his missionary journeys.
- Paul left his co-worker Titus on Crete to teach the Christians and to help appoint leaders for the church there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:8-11
- Acts 27:7-8
- Amos 09:7-8
- Titus 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2912, G2914

Cush

Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, Canaan, Egypt, Ethiopia)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Genesis 10:6-7
- Jeremiah 13:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570

Cyprus

Facts:

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about 64 kilometers south of the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Barnabas was from Cyprus so it is probable that his cousin John Mark was also from there.
- Paul and Barnabas preached together on the island of Cyprus at the beginning of their first missionary journey. John Mark came along to help them on that trip.
- Later on, Barnabas and Mark visited Cyprus again.
- In the Old Testament, Cyprus is mentioned as being a rich source of cypress trees.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Barnabas, John Mark, the sea)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:36-37
- Acts 13:4-5
- Acts 15:39-41
- Acts 27:3-6
- Ezekiel 27:6-7
- Isaiah 23:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2953, G2954

Cyrene

Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Crete)

Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2956, G2957

Cyrus

Facts:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

- King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
- Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
- Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Daniel, Darius, Ezra, Nehemiah, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23
- Daniel 01:19-21
- Ezra 05:12-13
- Isaiah 44:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3566

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Assyria,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 09:3-4
- Acts 26:12-14
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1833, H1834, G1154

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term "Danites" refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Jerusalem, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:34-35
- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 30:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Daniel

Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniels enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:6-7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Daniel 07:27-28
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Matthew 24:15-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1840, H1841, G1158

Darius

Facts:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that "Darius" was a title rather than a name.

- "Darius the Mede" was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion's den as punishment for worshiping God.
- "Darius the Persian" helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Persia, Babylon, Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- Ezra 04:4-6
- Haggai 01:1-2
- Nehemiah 12:22-23
- Zechariah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1867, H1868

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Samuel 05:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:8-10
- Acts 02:25-26
- Acts 13:21-22
- Luke 01:30-33
- Mark 02:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.

- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

Delilah

Facts:

Delilah was a Philistine woman who was loved by Samson, but was not his wife.

- Delilah loved money more than she loved Samson.
- The Philistines bribed Delilah to trick Samson into telling her how he could be made weak. When his strength was gone, the Philistines captured him.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- Judges 16:4-5
- Judges 16:6-7
- Judges 16:10-12
- Judges 16:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1807

Eden, garden of Eden

Facts:

In ancient times, Eden was a region that had a garden where God placed the first man and woman to live.

- The garden where Adam and Eve lived was only part of Eden.
- The exact location of the region of Eden is not certain, but the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers were flowing through it.
- The word "Eden" comes from a Hebrew word meaning to "take great delight in."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, Euphrates River, Eve)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 04:16-17
- Joel 02:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5729, H5731

Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
- The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies, birthright, Esau, Obadiah, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Genesis 36:1-3
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarch, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:9-10
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- Matthew 02:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to _*Egypt* _ to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Ekron, Ekronites

Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

- A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
- When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod and then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
- When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaziah, ark of the covenant, Ashdod, Beelzebul, false god, Gath, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:10
- Joshua 13:2-3
- Judges 01:18-19
- Zechariah 09:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6138, H6139

Elam, Elamites

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called "Elamites," and they lived in a region that was also called "Elam."
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- Acts 02:8-11
- Ezra 08:4-7
- Isaiah 22:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

Eleazar

Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

- Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
- Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
- Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, high priest, David, might, mighty, mightier, mightily)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H499, G1648

Eliakim

Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Hezekiah, Jehoiakim, Josiah, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:16-18
- 2 Kings 18:26-27
- 2 Kings 18:36-37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H471, G1662

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** **Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:02** **Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:03** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:04** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:07** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."

- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:03** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

Elisha

Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Elijah, Naaman, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- Luke 04:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H477

Elizabeth

Facts:

Elizabeth was the mother of John the Baptist. Her husband's name was Zechariah.

- Zechariah and Elizabeth had never been able to have children, but in their old age, God promised Zechariah that Elizabeth would bear him a son.
- God kept his promise, and soon Zechariah and Elizabeth were able to conceive, and she gave birth to a son. They named the baby John.
- Elizabeth was also a relative of Mary, Jesus' mother.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: John (the Baptist), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 01:39-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1665

En Gedi

Definition:

En Gedi was the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

- En Gedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
- Part of its name means "fountain," referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
- En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
- There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: David, desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing, Judah, rest, rests, rested, resting, restless, Salt Sea, Saul (OT), stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses, vineyard, vineyards)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Song of Solomon 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5872

Enoch

Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Seth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:1-4
- Genesis 05:18-20
- Genesis 05:21-24
- Jude 01:14-16
- Luke 03:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G1802

Ephesus, Ephesian, Ephesians

Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, Paul, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 19:1-2
- Ephesians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54-55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

Ephrath, Ephrathah, Ephrathite, Ephrathites

Facts:

Ephrathah was the name of a city and region in the northern part of Israel. The city of Ephrathah was later called "Bethlehem" or "Ephrathah-Bethlehem."

- Ephrathah was the name of one of Caleb's sons. The city of Ephrathah was probably named after him.
- A person who was from the city of Ephrathah was called an "Ephrathite."
- Boaz, the great-grandfather of David, was an Ephrathite.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, Caleb, David, Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H672, H673

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Edom, Isaac, Jacob, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34-35
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Romans 09:10-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **07:02** So _*Esau* _ gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **07:10** But _*Esau* _ had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

Esther

Facts:

Esther was a Jewish woman who became queen of the Persian kingdom during the time of the Babylonian captivity of the Jews.

- The book of Esther tells the story of how Esther became the wife of the Persian King Ahasuerus and how God used her to save her people.
- Esther was an orphan who was raised by her godly older cousin, Mordecai.
- Her obedience to her adoptive father helped her to be obedient to God.
- Esther obeyed God and risked her life in order to save her people, the Jews.
- The story of Esther illustrates God's sovereign control over the events of history, especially how he protects his people and works through those who obey him.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, Mordecai, Persia)

Bible References:

- Esther 02:7
- Esther 02:15-16
- Esther 07:1-2
- Esther 08:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H635

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cush, Egypt, eunuch, eunuchs, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:26-28
- Acts 08:29-31
- Acts 08:32-33
- Acts 08:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 03:8-9
- Zephaniah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3571, G128

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Isaiah 07:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

Eve

Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, life, live, lived, lives, living, alive, Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:13-15
- 2 Corinthians 11:3-4
- Genesis 03:20-21
- Genesis 04:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:13** Then God took one of Adam's ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **02:02** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, "Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?"
- **02:11** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means "life-giver," because she would become the mother of all people.
- **21:01** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake's head.
- **48:02** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **49:08** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2332, G2096

Ezekiel

Facts:

Ezekiel was a prophet of God during the exile period when many Jews were taken to Babylon.

- Ezekiel was a priest living in the kingdom of Judah when he and many other Jews were captured by the Babylonian army.
- For over twenty years, he and his wife lived in Babylon near a river, and the Jews came there to hear him speak messages from God.
- Among other things, Ezekiel prophesied about the destruction and restoration of Jerusalem and the temple.
- He also prophesied about the future kingdom of the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Christ, exile, exiles, exiled, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Ezekiel 24:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3168

Ezra

Facts:

Ezra was an Israelite priest and expert in Jewish law who recorded the history of the Israelites' return to Jerusalem from Babylon where Israel had been held captive for 70 years.

- Ezra recorded this part of Israel's history in the biblical book of Ezra. He may also have written the book of Nehemiah, since these two books had originally been one single book.
- When Ezra returned to Jerusalem he re-established the Law, since the Israelites had stopped obeying the Sabbath laws and had intermarried with women who practiced pagan religions.
- Ezra also helped rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians when they captured Jerusalem.
- There are two other men named Ezra mentioned in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, exile, exiles, exiled, Jerusalem, law, Nehemiah, temple)

Bible References:

- Ezra 07:6-7
- Nehemiah 08:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H250, H5830, H5831, H5834

Gabriel

Facts:

Gabriel is the name of one of God's angels. He is mentioned by name several times, in both the Old and New Testaments.

- God sent Gabriel to tell the prophet Daniel the meaning of a vision he had seen.
- Another time, while Daniel was praying, the angel Gabriel flew to him and prophesied about what would happen in the future. Daniel described him as a "man."
- In the New Testament it is recorded that Gabriel came to Zechariah to prophesy that his aged wife Elizabeth would have a son, John.
- Sixth months after that, Gabriel was sent to Mary to tell her that God would miraculously enable her to conceive a child who would be the "Son of God." Gabriel told Mary to name her son "Jesus."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, Daniel, Elizabeth, John (the Baptist), Mary, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Son of God, Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Daniel 08:15-17
- Daniel 09:20-21
- Luke 01:18-20
- Luke 01:26-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1403, G1043

Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:How to Translate Names)

(See also: census, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18-19
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:9-11
- Joshua 01:12-13
- Joshua 21:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

Galatia, Galatians

Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Cilicia,
good news, Paul, works, deeds, work, acts)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1053, G1054

Galilee, Galilean, Galileans

Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: Nazareth, Samaria, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:31-32
- Acts 13:30-31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:1-3
- Luke 13:1-3
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:06** Finally, the people said, "We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**."
- **41:06** Then the angel told the women, "Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

Gath, Gittite, Gittites

Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there awhile with his two wives and with six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gaza, Goliath, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:39-40
- 1 Samuel 05:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- Joshua 11:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1661, H1663

Gaza

Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Philip, Philistines, Ethiopia, Gath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Acts 08:26-28
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

Gerar

Facts:

Gerar was a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

- King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
- The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Beersheba, Hebron, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1642

Geshur, Geshurites

Definition:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee between the countries of Israel and Aram.

- King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king, and she bore him a son, Absalom.
- After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 140 kilometers. He stayed there three years.

(See also: Absalom, Amnon, Aram, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:23-24
- 2 Samuel 03:2-3
- Deuteronomy 03:14
- Joshua 12:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1650

Gethsemane

Facts:

Gethsemane was a garden of olive trees east of Jerusalem beyond the Kidron valley and near the Mount of Olives.

- The garden of Gethsemane was a place where Jesus and his followers would go to be alone and rest, away from the crowds.
- It was in Gethsemane that Jesus prayed in deep sorrow, before being arrested there by Jewish leaders.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Judas Iscariot, Kidron Valley, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1068

Gibeah

Facts:

Gibeah was a city located north of Jerusalem and south of Bethel.

- Gibeah was in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.
- It was the site of a huge battle between the Benjamites and Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Benjamin, Bethel, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:26-27
- 2 Samuel 21:5-6
- Hosea 09:8-9
- Judges 19:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1387, H1389, H1390, H1394

Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, Jericho, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29-31
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:08** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

Gideon

Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man whom God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

- During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
- Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
- Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
- He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Baal, Asherah, deliver, Midian, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 06:11-12
- Judges 06:22-24
- Judges 08:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:05** The angel of Yahweh came to **Gideon** and said, "God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites."
- **16:06** **Gideon's** father had an altar dedicated to an idol. God told **Gideon** to tear down that altar.
- **16:08** There were so many of them (Midianites) that they could not be counted. **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them.
- **16:08** **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them. **Gideon** asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **16:10** 32,000 Israelite soldiers came to **Gideon**, but God told him this was too many.
- **16:12** Then **Gideon** returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a torch.
- **16:15** The people wanted to make **Gideon** their king.
- **16:16** Then **Gideon** used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But the people started worshiping it as if it were an idol.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1439, H1441

Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:21-22
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Amos 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Gilgal

Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called "Gilgal" in the Old Testament.
- The word "gilgal" means "circle of stones," perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as "the gilgal." This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Elijah, , Elisha, Jericho, Jordan River)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 07:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:1-2
- Hosea 04:15-16
- Judges 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

Girgashites

Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan , Ham, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:13-16
- Deuteronomy 07:1
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622

Golgotha

Facts:

"Golgotha" was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means "Skull" or "Place of the Skull."

- Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
- In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as "Calvary," which comes from the Latin word for "skull."
- Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to "Golgotha," since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(Translation Suggestion: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- John 19:17-18
- Mark 15:22-24
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1115

Goliath

Facts:

Goliath was a very tall and very large soldier in the army of the Philistines who was killed by David.

- Goliath was between two and three meters tall. He is often referred to as a giant because of his great size.
- Although Goliath had better weapons and was much bigger than David, God gave David the strength and ability to defeat Goliath.
- The Israelites were declared victorious over the Philistines as a result of David's victory over Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:4-5
- 1 Samuel 17:4-5
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1555

Gomorrah

Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham , Babylon, Lot, Salt Sea, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:4-6
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:20-21
- Isaiah 01:9
- Matthew 10:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

Goshen

Definition:

Goshen was the name of a fertile region of land located along the Nile River in the northern part of Egypt.

- When Joseph was a ruler in Egypt, his father and brothers and their families came to live in Goshen to escape a famine in Canaan.
- They and their descendants lived well in Goshen for over 400 years, but then they were forced into slavery by the Egyptian pharaoh.
- Finally God sent Moses to help the people of Israel leave the land of Goshen and escape this slavery.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, famine, famines, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- Exodus 08:22-24
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Genesis 47:1-2
- Genesis 50:7-9
- Joshua 10:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1657

Greece, Grecian

Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called "Greeks" and their language is "Greek." People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term "Greek" is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Corinth, Gentile, Greek, Hebrew, Philippi, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- Daniel 08:20-21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- Zechariah 09:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G1671

Greek, Grecian

Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Gentile, Greece, Hebrew, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:28-30
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:9-11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

Habakkuk

Facts:

Habakkuk was an Old Testament prophet who lived around the time that King Jehoiakim was reigning over Judah. The prophet Jeremiah was also alive during some of this time.

- This prophet wrote the book of Habakkuk around 600 BC when the Babylonians conquered Jerusalem and took many of the people of Judah into exile.
- Yahweh gave Habakkuk the prophecy about how the "Chaldeans" (Babylonians) would come and conquer the people of Judah.
- One of Habakkuk's most well-known statements is: "the righteous person shall live by his faith."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Jehoiakim, Jeremiah)

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2265

Hagar

Facts:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham,
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, Ishmael,
Sarah,
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery,
maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:8-9
- Genesis 25:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:01** So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **05:02** **Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

Haggai

Facts:

Haggai was a prophet of Judah after the Jews returned home from being captives in Babylon.

- During the period when Haggai was prophesying, King Uzziah was reigning over Judah.
- The prophet Zechariah was also prophesying during this period.
- Haggai and Zechariah exhorted the Jews to rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians under King Nebuchadnezzar.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar, Uzziah, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- Ezra 05:1-2
- Ezra 06:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2292

Ham

Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, Canaan, dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable, Noah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2526

Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Canaan, Nebuchadnezzar, Syria, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Samuel 08:9-10
- Amos 06:1-2
- Ezekiel 47:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

Hamor

Facts:

Hamor was a Canaanite man living in the city of Shechem when Jacob and his family were living in nearby Succoth. He was a Hivite.

- Jacob bought a family burial ground from Hamor's sons.
- While they were there, Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah.
- Dinah's brothers took revenge on Hamor's family and killed all the men in the city of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hivite, Jacob, Shechem, Succoth)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:14-16
- Genesis 34:1-3
- Genesis 34:20-21
- Joshua 24:32-33
- Judges 09:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2544

Hananiah

Facts:

Hananiah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament.

- One Hananiah was an Israelite captive in Babylon whose name was changed to "Shadrach."
- He was given a position as a royal servant due to his excellent character and abilities.
- Once Hanahiah (Shadrach) and two other Israelite young men were thrown into a fire in a furnace because they refused to worship the Babylonian king. God showed his power by protecting them from being harmed.
- Another man named Hananiah was listed as a descendant of King Solomon.
- A different Hananiah was a false prophet during the time of the prophet Jeremiah.
- One man named Hananiah was a priest who helped lead a celebration during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Azariah, Babylon, Daniel, false prophet, Jeremiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:6-7
- Daniel 02:17-18
- Jeremiah 28:1-2
- Jeremiah 28:5-7
- Jeremiah 28:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2608

Hannah

Facts:

Hannah was the mother of the prophet Samuel. She was one of two wives of Elkanah.

- Hannah was not able to conceive a child, which was a great grief to her.
- At the temple, Hannah earnestly prayed for God to give her a son, promising to dedicate him to serving God.
- God granted her request and when the boy Samuel was old enough, she brought him to serve at the temple.
- God also gave Hannah other children after that.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: conceive, conceives, conceived, conception, Samuel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:1-2
- 1 Samuel 02:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2584

Haran

Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Caleb, Canaan, Levite, Lot, Terah, Ur)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12-13
- Acts 07:1-3
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2039

Hebron

Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Absalom)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 02:10-11
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:26-27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 01:8-10
- Numbers 13:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276, H5683

Herod Antipas

Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

- Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as "King Herod" even though he was not really a king.
- Herod Antipas ruled one-fourth of the Roman Empire and so he was also called "Herod the tetrarch."
- Antipas is the "Herod" who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
- It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
- The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: crucify, crucified, Herod the Great, John (the Baptist), king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, Rome)

Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 03:18-20
- Luke 09:7-9
- Luke 13:31-33
- Luke 23:8-10
- Mark 06:18-20
- Matthew 14:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264, G2265, G2267

Herod the Great

Facts:

Herod the Great was ruling over Judea at the time Jesus was born. He was the first of several Edomite rulers named Herod who ruled over parts of the Roman Empire.

- His ancestors converted to Judaism and he was raised as a Jew.
- Caesar Augustus named him "King Herod" even though he was not a true king. He ruled over the Jews in Judea for 33 years.
- Herod the Great was known for the beautiful buildings he ordered to be built and for the rebuilding of the Jewish temple in Jerusalem.
- This Herod was very cruel and had many people killed. When he heard that a "king of the Jews" had been born in Bethlehem, he had all the baby boys in that town killed.
- His sons Herod Antipas and Herod Philip and his grandson Herod Agrippa also became Roman rulers. His great-grandson Herod Agrippa II (called "King Agrippa") ruled over the entire area of Judea.

(See How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod Antipas, Judea, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, temple)

Bible References:

- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Matthew 02:16
- Matthew 02:19-21
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264

Herodias

Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

- Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas's brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
- John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod Antipas, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- Luke 03:18-20
- Mark 06:16-17
- Mark 06:21-22
- Matthew 14:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2266

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, false god, Judah, Sennacherib)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 01:1-2
- Matthew 01:9-11
- Proverbs 25:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2396, H3169, G1478

Hilkiah

Facts:

Hilkiah was the high priest during the reign of King Josiah.

- When the temple was being repaired, Hilkiah the high priest found the Book of the Law and ordered that it be brought to King Josiah.
- After the Book of the Law was read to him, Josiah was grieved and caused the people of Judah to worship Yahweh again and obey his laws.
- Another man named Hilkiah was the son of Eliakim and worked in the palace during the time of King Hezekiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Eliakim, Hezekiah, high priest, Josiah, Judah,
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, worship, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2518

Hittite, Hittites

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, Esau, alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners, Ham, might, mighty, mightier, mightily, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:10-11
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:7-8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Hivite, Hivites

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 34:1-3
- Joshua 09:1-2
- Judges 03:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

Horeb

Definition:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

- Mount Horeb is called the "mountain of God."
- Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
- It is possible that "Horeb" was the actual name of the mountain and that "Mount Sinai" simply means "mountain of Sinai," referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: covenant, covenants, new covenant, Israel, Moses, Sinai, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 05:9-10
- Deuteronomy 01:1-2
- Exodus 03:1-3
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722

Hosea

Facts:

Hosea was a prophet of Israel who lived and prophesied about 750 years before the time of Christ.

- His ministry lasted for many years through the reigns of several kings, such as Jeroboam, Zechariah, Jotham, Ahaz, Hoshea, Uzziah, and Hezekiah.
- Hosea was told by God to marry a prostitute named Gomer and to continue to love her, even though she was unfaithful to him.
- This was a picture of God's love for his unfaithful people, Israel.
- Hosea prophesied against the people of Israel because of their sin, warning them to turn away from worshipping idols.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Hezekiah, Hoshea, Jeroboam, Jotham, Uzziah, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- Hosea 01:1-2
- Hosea 01:3-5
- Hosea 01:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954, G5617

Hoshea

Facts:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

- Hoshea son of Alah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
- Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
- After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azaziah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Canaan, Ephraim, Hezekiah, Joshua, Moses)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:19-22
- 2 Kings 15:29-31
- 2 Kings 17:1-3
- 2 Kings 18:1-3
- 2 Kings 18:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954

house of David

Facts:

The expression "house of David" refers to the family or descendants of King David.

- This could also be translated as "descendants of David" or "family of David" or "King David's clan."
- Because Jesus was descended from David, he was part of the "house of David."
- Sometimes "house of David" or "household of David" refers to the people in David's family who were still living.
- Other times this term is more general and refers to all his descendants, including those who had already died.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David,
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants,
house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers, Jesus,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Samuel 03:6-7
- Luke 01:69-71
- Psalms 122:4-5
- Zechariah 12:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1732, G1138, G3624

Iconium

Facts:

Iconium was a city in the south central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- On Paul's first missionary journey, he and Barnabas went to Iconium after the Jews forced them to leave the city of Antioch.
- Then the unbelieving Jews and Gentiles in Iconium also planned to stone Paul and his coworkers, but they escaped to the nearby city of Lystra.
- After that the people from both Antioch and Iconium came to Lystra and stirred up the people there to stone Paul.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Barnabas, Lystra, stone, stones, stoning)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 14:19-20
- Acts 16:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2430

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham,
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants,
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever, fulfill, fulfilled, Jacob, Sarah,
twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19-20
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:17-18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**."
- **05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.**
- **06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, Christ, Hezekiah, Jotham, Judah, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:25-26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:1-3
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:14-16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:02** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.

- **45:08** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

Ishmael, Ishmaelite, Ishmaelites

Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name "Ishmael" means "God hears."
- God promised to bless Abraham's son Ishmael, but he was not the son God had promised to establish his covenant with.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, covenant, covenants, new covenant, desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, Egypt, Hagar, Isaac, Nebuchadnezzar, Paran, Sarah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- Genesis 16:11-12
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 37:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:02** So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- **05:04** "I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3458, H3459

Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan,
deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive
, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11-13
- Acts 07:44-46
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there

with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Manasseh, Naphtali, twelve tribes of Israel, Zebulun)

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Genesis 30:16-18
- Joshua 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G2466

James (brother of Jesus)

Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, Christ, church, churches, Church,
Judas the son of James,
persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor,
persecutors
)

Bible References:

- Galatians 01:18-20
- Galatians 02:9-10
- James 01:1-3
- Jude 01:1-2
- Mark 09:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

James (son of Alphaeus)

Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, disciple, disciples, James (brother of Jesus), James (son of Zebedee), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

James (son of Zebedee)

Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, Elijah, James (brother of Jesus), James (son of Alphaeus), Moses)

Bible References:

- Luke 09:28-29
- Mark 01:19-20
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

Japheth

Facts:

Japheth was one of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Japheth and his two brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- Noah's sons are usually listed as, "Shem, Ham, and Japheth." This indicates that Japheth was the youngest brother.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters, Ham, Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:1-4
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:13-14
- Genesis 10:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3315

Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:13-16
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Jehoiachin

Facts:

Jehoiachin was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Jehoiachin became king when he was 18 years old. He only reigned three months, and after that he was captured by the Babylonian army and taken to Babylon.
- During his short reign, Jehoiachin did evil things like the ones his grandfather King Manasseh and his father King Jehoiakim had done.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Jehoiakim, Judah, Manasseh)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:8
- 2 Kings 24:15-17
- Esther 02:5-6
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Jeremiah 22:24-26
- Jeremiah 37:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3078, H3112, H3204, H3659

Jehoiada

Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

- Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
- Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
- For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
- Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaziah, Baal, Benaiah, Joash)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 11:4-6
- 2 Kings 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3077, H3111

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehioakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Eliakim, Jeremiah, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:15-16
- 2 Kings 23:34-35
- 2 Kings 24:1-2
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Jeremiah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3079

Jehoram, Joram

Facts:

"Jehoram" was the name of two kings in the Old Testament. Both kings were also known as "Joram."

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- The King Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name "Jehoram" when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name "Joram" for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Jehoshaphat, Joram, Judah, kingdom of Israel, Obadiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:48-50
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Kings 11:1-3
- 2 Kings 12:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3088, H3141, G2496

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: altar, altars, David, false god, Israel, Judah, priest, priests, priesthood, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Kings 01:17-18
- 2 Samuel 08:15-18
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, H3146, G2498

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Ahaziah, Baal, Elisha, Jehoshaphat, Jehu, Jezebel, Joram, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:34-38
- 1 Kings 16:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 10:8-9
- Hosea 01:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

Jephthah

Facts:

Jephthah was a warrior from Gilead who served as a judge over Israel.

- In Hebrews 11:32, Jephthah is praised as an important leader who delivered his people from their enemies.
- He rescued the Israelites from the Ammonites and led his people to defeat the Ephraimites.
- Jepthah however, made a foolish, hasty vow to God which resulted in the sacrifice of his daughter.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, deliver, Ephraim, judge, vow, vows, vowed)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 11:1-3
- Judges 11:34-35
- Judges 12:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3316

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Judah, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings, cistern, cisterns, well, wells)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 01:1-3
- Jeremiah 11:1-2
- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:05** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G2408

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua,
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:77-79
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35-37
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: false god, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:29-31
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Amos 01:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:09** **Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:4-5
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz,
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants,
fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful, Jesus, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Ruth,
twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:9-12
- 1 Kings 12:16-17
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:30-32
- Matthew 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

Jethro, Reuel

Facts:

The names "Jethro" and "Reuel" both refer to the father of Moses' wife, Zipporah. There were also two other men named "Reuel" in the Old Testament.

- When Moses was a shepherd in the land of Midian, he married the daughter of a Midianite man named Reuel.
- Later on Reuel is referred to as "Jethro, the priest of Midian." It could be that "Reuel" was his clan name.
- When God spoke to Moses from a flaming bush, Moses was tending Jethro's sheep,
- Some time later, after God had rescued the Israelites from Egypt, Jethro came out to the Israelites in the wilderness and gave Moses good advice about judging the affairs of the people.
- He believed in God when he heard about all the miracles God had done for the Israelites in Egypt.
- One of Esau's sons was named Reuel.
- Another man named Reuel is mentioned in the genealogy of the Israelites who returned to resettle in Judah after their captivity in Babylon had ended.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity, clan, clans, desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, Egypt, Esau, miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs, Moses, desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:34-37
- Exodus 02:18-20
- Exodus 03:1-3
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Numbers 10:29-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3503, H7467

Jezebel

Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Elijah, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 09:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:30-32
- Revelation 02:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H348, G2403

Jezreel, Jezreelite

Definition:

Jezreel was an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the "Valley of Jezreel."
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth's vineyard was located near King Ahab's palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab's evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: Ahab, Elijah, Issachar, Jezebel, palace, palaces, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 2 Kings 08:28-29
- 2 Samuel 02:1-3
- Judges 06:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3157, H3158, H3159

Joab

Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: Absalom, David)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- 1 Kings 01:7-8
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 2 Samuel 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 07:11-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3097

Joash

Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer Gideon.
- Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
- The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
- When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
- King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places, and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
- King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two distinct kings.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaziah, altar, altars, Benjamin, false god, Gideon, high places, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
- 2 Kings 11:1-3
- Amos 01:1-2
- Judges 06:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3101, H3135

Job

Facts:

Job was a man who is described in the Bible as blameless and righteous before God. He is best known for persevering in his faith in God through times of terrible suffering.

- Job lived in the land of Uz, which was located somewhere east of the land of Canaan, possibly near the region of the Edomites.
- It is thought that he lived during the time of Esau and Jacob because one of Job's friends was a "Temanite," which was a people group named after Esau's grandson.
- The Old Testament book of Job tells about how Job and others responded to his suffering. It also gives God's viewpoint as the sovereign creator and ruler of the universe.
- After all the disasters, God eventually healed Job and gave him more children and wealth.
- The book of Job says that he was very old when he died.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Esau, flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters, JacobNoah, people group)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- James 05:9-11
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H347, H3102, G2492

Joel

Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joash, Judah, Pentecost)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Acts 02:16-17
- Ezra 10:41-44
- Joel 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3100, G2493

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation, James (son of Zebedee), John (the Baptist), Zebedee)

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Revelation 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.\
- **44:01** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.\
- **44:06** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.\
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"\
- **44:09** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2491

John (the Baptist)

Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: baptize, baptized, baptism, Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 11:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:02** The angel said to Zechariah, "Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!"
- **22:07** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:01** **John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, "Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G910 G2491

John Mark

Facts:

John Mark, also known as "Mark," was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark's mother's house.
- Mark was not an apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Barnabas, Paul)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 12:24-25
- Acts 13:4-5
- Acts 13:13-15
- Acts 15:36-38
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 04:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2491, G3138

Jonah

Definition:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

- The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
- Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
- God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
- He told the men sailing the ship that he wasrunning away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did the storm stopped.
- Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
- After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and they turned from their sins.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, Nineveh, turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
)

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:1-3
- Luke 11:29-30
- Matthew 12:38-40
- Matthew 16:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3124, G2495

Jonathan

Facts:

Jonathan was the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means "Yahweh has given."

- David's best friend, Jonathan, is the most well-known Jonathan in the Bible with this name. This Jonathan was King Saul's oldest son.
- Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abiathar, David, Moses, Jeremiah, priest, priests, priesthood, Saul (OT), scribe, scribes)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:41-42
- 1 Samuel 14:1
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 2 Samuel 01:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3083, H3129

Joppa

Facts:

In Bible times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

- The ancient site of Joppa is the location of the present-day city of Jaffa, which is now part of the city of Tel Aviv.
- In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
- In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter brought her back to life.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: the sea, Jerusalem, Sharon, Tarshish)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:36-37
- Acts 10:7-8
- Acts 11:4-6
- Acts 11:11-14
- Jonah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3305, G2445

Joram

Facts:

Joram son of Ahab was a king of Israel. He was also sometimes referred to as "Jehoram."

- King Joram of Israel reigned at the same time as King Jehoram of Judah.
- Joram was an evil king who worshiped false gods and caused Israel to sin.
- King Joram of Israel also reigned during the time of the prophets Elijah and Obadiah.
- Another man named Joram was the son of King Tou of Hamath when David was king.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, David, Elijah, Hamath, Jehoram, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Obadiah, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Kings 01:17-18
- 2 Kings 08:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3088, H3141, G2496

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

Joseph (NT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jesus' earthly father and raised him as his son. He was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

- Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
- An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary's baby was the Son of God.
- After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
- Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Galilee, Jesus, Nazareth, Son of God, virgin, virgins, virginity)

Bible References:

- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 02:4-5
- Luke 02:15-16
- Matthew 01:18-19
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 02:19-21
- Matthew 13:54-56

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named **Joseph**.
- **23:01** **Joseph**, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. He did not want to shame her, so he planned to quietly divorce her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "**Joseph**, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **23:03** So **Joseph** married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.
- **23:04** **Joseph** and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in

Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.

- **26:04** Jesus said, "The words I just read to you are happening right now." All the people were amazed. "Isn't this the son of **Joseph**?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2501

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21-22
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Joshua 01:1-3
- Numbers 27:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."

- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: false god, Judah,
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, Passover, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- Jeremiah 01:1-3
- Matthew 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G2502

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, Ahaz, Gideon, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:4-5
- Isaiah 01:1
- Judges 09:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- Luke 03:33-35
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: Judah, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:7-8
- Hosea 05:14-15
- Jeremiah 07:33-34
- Judges 01:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:07** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.\
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.\
- **18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.\
- **20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.\
- **20:05** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.\
- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.\
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant

the fields.\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4438, H3063

Judas Iscariot

Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship,
betray, betrays, betrayed, betraying, betrayer, betrayers, Jewish leaders,
Judas the son of James)

Bible References:

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:02** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:08** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed

himself.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

Judas the son of James

Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

- Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
- Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
- The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
- It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: James (son of Zebedee), Judas Iscariot, son, sons, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455

Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 02:8-11
- Acts 09:31-32
- Acts 12:18-19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 04:42-44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3061, G2453

Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Facts:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, Edom, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 48:27-29
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Genesis 16:13-14
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

Kedar

Facts:

Kedar was Ishmael's second son. It was also an important city, which was probably named after the man.

- The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
- The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
- The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goathair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
- These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
- In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids, Ishmael, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- Song of Solomon 01:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6938

Kedesh

Facts:

Kedesh was a Canaanite city that was taken over by the Israelites when they entered the land of Canaan.

- This city was located in the northern part of Israel, in the portion of land that was given to the tribe of Naphtali.
- Kedesh was one of the cities that was chosen as a place where the Levite priests could live, since they did not have any land of their own.
- It was also set apart as a "city of refuge."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hebron, Levite, Naphtali, priest, priests, priesthood, refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering, Shechem, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:71-73
- Joshua 19:35-37
- Judges 04:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: Kedesh

Kerethites

Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as "Cherethites."

- The "Kerethites and Pelethites" were a special group of soldiers from King David's army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
- Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David's administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
- The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom's revolt.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Absalom, Benaiah, David, Philistines)

Bible References:

- Zephaniah 02:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3774

Kidron Valley

Facts:

The Kidron Valley is a deep valley just outside the city of Jerusalem, between its eastern wall and the Mount of Olives.

- The valley is over 1,000 meters deep and about 32 kilometers long.
- When King David was fleeing from his son Absalom, he went through the Kidron Valley to get to the Mount of Olives.
- King Josiah and King Asa of Judah ordered that the high places and altars of false gods be smashed and burned; the ashes were thrown into the Kidron Valley.
- During the reign of King Hezekiah, the Kidron Valley was where the priests threw everything impure that they removed from the temple.
- The evil queen Athaliah was killed in this valley because of the wicked things she had done.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Absalom, Asa, Athaliah, David, false god, Hezekiah, high places, Josiah, Judah, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- John 18:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5674, H6939, G2748, G5493

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the ingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: Assyria, Israel, Judah, Jerusalem, kingdom, kingdoms, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- Jeremiah 05:10-13
- Jeremiah 09:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **20:02** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

Korah, Korahite, Korahites

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

- One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
- Korah was also a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
- A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: Aaron, authority, authorities, Caleb, descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, Esau, Judah, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 042:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

Laban

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Laban was the uncle and father-in-law of Jacob.

- Jacob lived with Laban's household in Padan Aram and managed his sheep and goats as a condition of marriage to Laban's daughters.
- Jacob's preference was for Laban's daughter Rachel to be his wife.
- Laban deceived Jacob and made him marry his oldest daughter Leah first before giving Rachel to him as his wife.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Nahor, Leah, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:28-30
- Genesis 24:50-51
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 29:4-6
- Genesis 29:13-14
- Genesis 30:25-26
- Genesis 46:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3837

Lamech

Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Noah, Seth)

Bible References:

- Genesis 04:18-19
- Genesis 04:23-24
- Genesis 05:25-27
- Genesis 05:28-29
- Genesis 05:30-31
- Luke 03:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3929, G2984

Lazarus

Facts:

Lazarus and his sisters, Mary and Martha, were special friends of Jesus. Jesus often stayed with them in their home in Bethany.

- Lazarus is best known for the fact that Jesus raised him from the dead after he had been buried in a tomb for several days.
- The Jewish leaders were angry at Jesus and jealous that he had done this miracle, and they tried to find a way to kill both Jesus and Lazarus.
- Jesus also told a parable about a poor beggar and a rich man in which the beggar was named "Lazarus."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: beg, begged, begging, beggar, Jewish leaders, Martha, Mary, raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose)

Bible References:

- John 11:10-11
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 16:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **37:01** One day, Jesus received a message that **Lazarus** was very sick. **Lazarus** and his two sisters, Mary and Martha, were close friends of Jesus.
- **37:02** Jesus said, "Our friend **Lazarus** has fallen asleep, and I must wake him."
- **37:03** Jesus' disciples replied, "Master, if **Lazarus** is sleeping, then he will get better." Then Jesus told them plainly, "**Lazarus** is dead."
- **37:04** When Jesus arrived at **Lazarus'** hometown, **Lazarus** had already been dead for four days.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put **Lazarus**?"
- **37:09** Then Jesus shouted, "**Lazarus**, come out!"
- **37:10** So **Lazarus** came out! He was still wrapped in grave clothes.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and **Lazarus**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2976

Leah

Facts:

Leah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of ten of Jacob's sons and their descendants were ten of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Leah's father was Laban, who was the brother of Jacob's mother Rebekah.
- Jacob didn't love Leah as much as he loved his other wife, Rachel, but God abundantly blessed Leah by giving her many children.
- Leah's son Judah was an ancestor of King David and Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Judah, Laban, Rachel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:15-18
- Genesis 29:28-30
- Genesis 31:4-6
- Ruth 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3812

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cedar, cedars, cedarwood, cypress, fir, firs, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
- Deuteronomy 01:7-8
- Psalms 029:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, priests, priesthood, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:33-34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

Leviathan

Facts:

The term "Leviathan" refers to a very large, extinct animal mentioned in the earliest writings of the Old Testament, the books of Job, Psalms, and Isaiah.

- Leviathan is described as a large, snake-like creature, strong and fierce and able to make the water around it "boil." The descriptions of it were similar to that of a dinosaur.
- Isaiah the prophet refered to Leviathan as "the gliding serpent".
- Job wrote from firsthand knowledge of Leviathan, so the animal was most likely alive during his lifetime.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Isaiah, Job, serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers)

Bible References:

- Job 03:8-10
- Psalms 104:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3882

Lot

Facts:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that that they could escape.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Ammon, Haran, Moab, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:7-9
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G3091

Luke

Facts:

Luke wrote two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

- In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
- It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile who came to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
- Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
- In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Antioch, Paul, Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Philemon 01:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: Luke

Lystra

Facts:

Lystra was a city in ancient Asia Minor that Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia, which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
- In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
- After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: evangelist, Iconium, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 14:5-7
- Acts 14:8-10
- Acts 14:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3082

Maacah

Facts:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asa, Asherah, Nahor, Naphtali, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

Macedonia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Berea, faith, good news, Greece, Philippi, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:9-12
- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- Acts 16:9-10
- Acts 20:1-3
- Philippians 04:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3109, G3110

Maker

Facts:

In general, a "maker" is someone who creates or makes things.

- In the Bible, the term "Maker" is sometimes used as a name or title for Yahweh, because he created everything.
- Usually this term is combined with "his" or "my" or "your."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Maker" can be translated as "the Creator" or "God who creates" or "the One who made everything."
- The phrase "his Maker" could also be translated as "the One who created him" or "God, who created him."
- The phrases "your Maker" and "my Maker" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Hosea 08:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2796, H3335, H6213, H6466, H6467, G1217

Malachi

Facts:

Malachi was one of God's prophets to the kingdom of Judah. He lived around 500 years before Christ was on earth.

- Malachi prophesied during the period when Israel's temple was being rebuilt after returning from the Babylonian captivity.
- Ezra and Nehemiah lived around the same time as Malachi.
- The book of Malachi is the last book of the Old Testament.
- Like all the Old Testament prophets, Malachi urged the people to repent of their sins and to turn back to worshiping Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity, Ezra, Judah, Nehemiah, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, repent, repents, repented, repentance, turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
)

Bible References:

- Malachi 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4401

man of God

Facts:

The expression "man of God" is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh.

- When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as "man who belongs to God" or "man whom God has chosen" or "man who serves God."
- When referring to an angel this could also be translated as "messenger of God" or "your angel" or "heavenly being from God who looks like a man."

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, honor, honors, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- 1 Kings 12:22-24
- 1 Samuel 09:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H430, G444, G2316

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: altar, altars, Dan, Ephraim, Ezra, false god, Jacob, Judah, pagan, pagans, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- Deuteronomy 03:12-13
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 01:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

Martha

Facts:

Martha was a woman from Bethany who followed Jesus.

- Martha had a sister named Mary and a brother named Lazarus, who also followed Jesus.
- One time when Jesus was visiting them in their home, Martha was distracted by meal preparation while her sister Mary sat and listened to Jesus teach.
- When Lazarus died, Martha told Jesus that she believed that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Lazarus, Mary (sister of Martha))

Bible References:

- John 11:1-2
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 10:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3136

Mary (sister of Martha)

Facts:

Mary was a women from Bethany who followed Jesus.

- Mary had a sister named Martha and a brother named Lazarus who also followed Jesus.
- One time Jesus said that Mary had chosen what was best when she chose to listen to him teach rather than being anxious about preparing him a meal as Martha was.
- Jesus brought Mary's brother Lazarus back to life.
- Sometime after that, while Jesus was eating in someone's home in Bethany, Mary poured expensive perfume on his feet in order to worship him.
- Jesus praised her for doing this and said that she was preparing his body for burial.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethany, frankincense, Lazarus, Martha)

Bible References:

- John 11:1-2
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 10:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

Mary Magdalene

Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, demon-possessed)

Bible References:

- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3094, G3137

Mary, the mother of Jesus

Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cana, Egypt, Herod the Great, Jesus, Joseph (NT), Son of God, virgin, virgins, virginity)

Bible References:

- John 02:3-5
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 01:34-35
- Mark 06:1-3
- Matthew 01:15-17
- Matthew 01:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the

Messiah."

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:06** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:04** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:01** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

Matthew, Levi

Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi, son of Alpheus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, Levite, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:27-28
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 02:13-14
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3017, G3156

Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called "Medes."

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, Elam, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:4-6
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 05:25-28
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezra 06:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G3370

Melchizedek

Facts:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later "Jerusalem")

- Melchizedek's name means "king of righteousness" and his title "king of Salem" means "king of peace."
- He was also called a "priest of God Most High."
- Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
- In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
- The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly "order of Melchizedek." Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek's was.
- Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, everlasting, high priest, Jerusalem, Levite,
priest, priests, priesthood,
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 07:15-17
- Psalm 110:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4442, G3198

Memphis

Definition:

Memphis was an ancient capital city in Egypt, along the Nile River.

- Memphis was located in Lower Egypt, just south of the Nile River delta, where the soil was very fertile and crops were plentiful.
- Its fertile soil and important location between Upper and Lower Egypt caused Memphis to become a major city of trade and commerce.

(Translation suggestions: Translating Names)

(See also: Egypt, Nile River)

Bible References:

- Hosea 09:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4644, H5297

Meshech

Facts:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
- The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
- Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
- The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Japheth, Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:5-7
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Psalms 120:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4851, H4902

Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim

Facts:

Mesopotamia is the area of land between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. Its location is in the region of the modern day country of Iraq.

- In the Old Testament, this region was called "Aram Naharaim."
- The word "Mesopotamia" means "between rivers." The phrase "Aram Naharaim" means "Aram of two rivers."
- Abraham lived in the Mesopotamian cities of Ur and Haran before moving on to the land of Canaan.
- Babylon was another important city in Mesopotamia.
- The region called "Chaldea" was also part of Mesopotamia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Babylon, Chaldea, Euphrates River)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:8-11
- Acts 07:1-3
- Genesis 24:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H763, G3318

Micah

Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

- The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
- Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
- Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
- His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
- In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stole the idol and other things, and took off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Dan, Ephraim, false god, Isaiah, Judah, judge, Levite, priest, priests, priesthood, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Samaria, silver)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 26:18-19
- Micah 01:1
- Micah 06:1-2

{{tag>publish ktlink}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4316, H4318

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, Daniel, messenger, messengers, Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 10:12-13
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Ezra 08:8-11
- Revelation 12:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4317, G3413

Midian, Midianite, Midianites

Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also Arabia, Egypt, flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds, Gideon, Jethro, Moses)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 02:15-17
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:27-28
- Judges 07:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:04** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

Miriam

Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miram and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, Cush, intercede, intercededs, intercession, Moses, Nile River, Pharaoh, rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4813

Mishael

Facts:

Mishael is the name of three men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Mishael was a cousin of Aaron. When two of Aaron's sons were killed by God after they offered incense in a away that did not follow what God had told them to do, Mishael and his brother were given the task of carrying the dead bodies outside the Israelite camp.
- Another man named Mishael stood beside Ezra when he publicly read the rediscovered law.
- During the time when the people of Israel were in exile in Babylon, a young man named Mishael was also captured and forced to live in Babylon. The Babylonians gave him the name, "Meshach." He, along with his companions, Azariah (Shadrach) and Hananiah (Abednego), refused to worship the king's statue and were thrown into a fiery furnace.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, Azariah, Babylon, Daniel, Hananiah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:6-7
- Daniel 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4332, H4333

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, "look-out point" or "watchtower."

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: David, Judah, kingdom of Israel, Moab, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabitess" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

Molech, Moloch

Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are "Moloch" and "Molek."

- People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
- Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, evil, wicked, wickedness, false god, God, false god, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, true, truth, truths, worship, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:7-8
- 2 Kings 23:10-11
- Acts 07:43
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Leviticus 18:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4432, G3434

Mordecai

Facts:

Mordecai was a Jewish man living in the country of Persia. He was the guardian of his cousin Esther, who later became the wife of the Persian king, Ahasuerus.

- While working at the royal palace, Mordecai overheard men plotting together to kill King Ahasuerus. He reported this and the king's life was saved.
- Some time later, Mordecai also found out about a plan to kill all the Jews in the kingdom of Persia. He advised Esther to appeal to the king to save her people.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, Esther, Persia)

Bible References:

- Esther 02:5-6
- Esther 03:5-6
- Esther 08:1-2
- Esther 10:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4782

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:20-21
- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 02:9-10
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Matthew 17:3-4
- Romans 05:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

Mount Hermon

Facts:

Mount Hermon is the name of the tallest mountain in Israel at the southern tip of the Lebanon mountain range.

- It is located north of the Sea of Galilee, at the northern border between Israel and Syria.
- Other names given to Mount Hermon by other people groups were "Mount Sirion" and "Mount Senir."
- Mount Hermon has three major peaks. The tallest peak is around 2,800 meters high.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:23-24
- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Psalms 042:5-6
- Song of Solomon 04:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H2768, H2769, H8149

Mount of Olives

Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as "the mountain that is east of Jerusalem."
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as "Olive Hill" or "Olive Tree Mountain."

(See also: Translate Names)

(See also: Gethsemane, olive, olives)

Bible References:

- Luke 19:29-31
- Luke 19:37-38
- Mark 13:3-4
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H2132, G3735, G1636

Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Jordan River, leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:6-7
- 2 Kings 05:1-2
- Luke 04:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:06** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G3497

Nahor

Facts:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Joshua 24:1-2
- Luke 03:33-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5152, G3493

Nahum

Facts:

Nahum was a prophet who preached during the time when the evil King Manasseh was ruling over Judah.

- Nahum was from the town of Elkosh, which was about 20 miles from Jerusalem.
- The Old Testament book of Nahum records his prophecies about the destruction of the Assyrian city of Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Manasseh,
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Nineveh)

Bible References:

- Nahum 01:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5151, G3486

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: synecdoche)
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asher, Dan, Jacob, Sea of Galilee, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:7-8
- Judges 01:33
- Matthew 04:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G3508

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:29-31
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, "Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me."
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G3481

Nazareth, Nazarene

Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it took about three to five days to travel on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareths synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: Christ, Galilee, Joseph (NT), Mary)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:07** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:13-15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Ezekiel 26:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:09** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant

the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means "the South," and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the "South" is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:61-62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

Nehemiah

Facts:

Nehemiah was an Israelite forced to move to the Babylonian empire when the people of Israel and Judah were taken captive by the Babylonians.

- While he was the cupbearer to the Persian king, Artaxerxes, Nehemiah asked the king for permission to return to Jerusalem.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in rebuilding the walls of Jerusalem which had been destroyed by the Babylonians.
- For twelve years Nehemiah was the governor of Jerusalem before returning to the king's palace.
- The Old Testament book of Nehemiah tells the story of Nehemiah's work in rebuilding the walls and his governing of the people in Jerusalem.
- There were also other men named Nehemiah in the Old Testament. Usually the name of the father was added, to distinguish which Nehemiah was being talked about.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, Jerusalem, son, sons)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:1-2
- Nehemiah 01:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5166

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Goshen, Moses)

Bible References:

- Amos 08:7-8
- Genesis 41:1-3
- Jeremiah 46:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **09:04** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **09:06** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **10:03** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2975, H4714, H5104

Nineveh, Ninevite

Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyria. A "Ninevite" was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people repented and God did not destroy them.
- The Assyrians later stopped serving God. They conquered the kingdom of Israel and carried the people away to Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Jonah, repent, repents, repented, repentance, turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 01:1-3
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 12:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5210, G3535, G3536

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:7-8
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37-39

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **03:04** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **03:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G3575

Obadiah

Facts:

Obadiah was an Old Testament prophet who prophesied against the people of Edom, who were the descendants of Esau. There were also many other men named Obadiah in the Old Testament.

- The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament and tells a prophecy that Obadiah received through a vision from God.
- It is not clear when Obadiah lived and prophesied. It may have been during the paeriods that Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, and Athaliah, reigned in Judah. The prophets Daniel, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah would also have been prophesying during part of this time.
- Obadiah may also have lived at a later time period, during the reign of King Zedekiah and the Babylonian captivity.
- Other men named Obadiah included a descendant of Sau,; a Gadite who became one of David's men, a palace administrator for King Ahab, an official of King Jehoshaphat, a man who helped with repairs to the temple during the time of King Josiah, and a Levite who was also a gatekeeper during the time of Nehemiah.
- It could be that the writer of the book of Obadiah was one of these men.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Babylon, David, Edom, Esau, Ezekiel, Daniel, Gad, Jehoshaphat, Josiah, Levite, Saul (OT), Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 08:38-40
- Ezra 08:8-11
- Obadiah 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5662

Omri

Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for 12 years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Israel, Jeroboam, Tirzah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6018

Paddan Aram

Facts:

Paddan Aram was the name of a region where Abraham's family lived before moving to the land of Canaan. It means "plain of Aram."

- When Abraham left Haran in Paddan Aram to travel to the land of Canaan, most of the rest of his family stayed behind in Haran.
- Many years later, Abraham's servant went to Paddan Aram to find a wife for Isaac among his relatives there and found Rebekah, grand-daughter of Bethuel.
- Isaac and Rebekah's son Jacob also traveled to Paddan Aram and married two daughters of Rebekah's brother Laban who was living in Haran.
- Aram, Paddan-Aram, and Aram-Nahariam were all part of the same region that is now where the modern-day country of Syria is located.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Aram, Bethuel, Canaan, Haran, Jacob, Laban, Rebekah, Syria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 35:9-10
- Genesis 46:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6307

Paran

Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, Egypt, Kadesh, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H364, H6290

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christian, jewish leaders, Rome, Roman)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:1-3
- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 13:9-10
- Galatians 01:1-2
- Philemon 01:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:06** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:01** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:02** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul**! **Saul**! Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:05** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your

sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.

- **46:06** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:09** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:01** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3972, G4569

Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor

Definition:

The terms "Peor" and "Mount Peor" refer to a mountain located northeast of the Salt Sea, in the region of Moab.

- The name "Beth Peor" was the name of a city, probably located on that mountain or near it. This was where Moses died after God showed him the Promised Land.
- "Baal Peor" was a false god of the Moabites that they worshiped at Mount Peor. The Israelites also started worshiping this idol and God punished them for it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Baal, false god, Moab, Salt Sea, worship)

Bible References:

- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Psalms 106:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1047, H1187, H6465

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called "Persians."
- Under King Cyrus' decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21
- Daniel 10:12-13
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, disciples, apostle, apostles, apostleship)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:11-12
- Luke 22:56-58
- Mark 03:13-16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14-15
- Matthew 14:28-30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:09** **Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
- **38:09** **Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."

- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11** **Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:08** **Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:11-13
- Acts 07:20-21
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 40:6-8
- Genesis 41:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08** **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** _ ***that he is more powerful than*** _**Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

Philip, the apostle

Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:43-45
- John 06:4-6
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: Philip

Philip, the evangelist

Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

- God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
- Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
- Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 08:6-8
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 08:29-31
- Acts 08:36-38
- Acts 08:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

Philippi, Philippians

Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece.

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: Caesarea, Christian, church, churches, Church, Macedonia, Paul, Silas)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- Acts 16:11-13
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Philippians 01:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5374, G5375

Philistia

Definition:

Philistia is the name of a large region in the land of Canaan, located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea.

- The region was located along the very fertile coastal plain reaching from Joppa in the north to Gaza in the south. It was about 64 km long and 16 km wide.
- Philistia was occupied by the "Philistines," a powerful people group who were frequent enemies of the Israelites.

(See also: Philistines, Gaza, Joppa)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:9-10
- Joel 03:4-6
- Psalms 060:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776 H6429 H06430

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means "people of the sea."

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

Phinehas

Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ark of the covenant, Jordan River, Midian, Philistines, Samuel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:3-4
- Ezra 08:1-3
- Joshua 22:13-14
- Numbers 25:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6372

Phoenicia

Facts:

In ancient times, Phoenicia was a wealthy nation located in Canaan along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel.

- Phoenicia occupied an area of land that was in the western region of what is the present-day country of Lebanon.
- In New Testament times, the capital of Phoenicia was Tyre. Another important Phoenician city was Sidon.
- Phoenicians were well-known for their woodworking skills using their country's plentiful cedar trees, for their production of a costly purple dye, and for their ability to travel and trade by sea. They were also highly skilled boat builders.
- One of the earliest alphabets was created by the Phoenician people. Their alphabet was widely used because of their contact with many people groups through trading.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cedar, cedars, cedarwood, purple, Sidon, Tyre)

Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 15:3-4
- Acts 21:1-2
- Isaiah 23:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, G4949, G5403

Pilate

Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: crucify, crucified,
govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls,
guilt, guilty, Judea, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28-29
- Luke 23:1-2
- Mark 15:1-3
- Matthew 27:11-14
- Matthew 27:57-58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:02** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:02** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

Pontus

Facts:

Pontus was a Roman province during the time of the Roman Empire and the early Church. It was located along the southern coast of the Black Sea, in the northern part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- As recorded in the book of Acts, people from the province of Pontus were in Jerusalem when the Holy Spirit first came to the apostles on the Day of Pentecost.
- A believer named Aquila was from Pontus.
- When Peter was writing to Christians who were scattered into different regions, Pontus was one of the regions he mentioned.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aquila, Pentecost)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- Acts 02:8-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4193, G4195

Potiphar

Facts:

Potiphar was an important official for the pharaoh of Egypt during the time that Joseph was sold as a slave to some Ishmaelites.

- Potiphar bought Joseph from the Ishmaelites and appointed him to be in charge of his household.
- When Joseph was falsely accused of doing wrong, Potiphar had Joseph put in prison.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Joseph (OT), Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:34-36
- Genesis 39:1-2
- Genesis 39:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6318

Priscilla

Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work.

- Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
- Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
- When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
- From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
- They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Christian, Corinth, Ephesus, Paul, Rome, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 04:19-22
- Acts 18:1-3
- Acts 18:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: Priscilla

Rabbah

Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: Ammon, David)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 2 Samuel 12:26-28
- Deuteronomy 03:11
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Jeremiah 49:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7237

Rachel

Facts:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.

- Rachel was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became two of the tribes of Israel.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, as she gave birth to Benjamin, Rachel died, and Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Jacob, Laban, Leah, Joseph (OT), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:4-6
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:28-30
- Genesis 31:4-6
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7354, G4478

Rahab

Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family were spared when, Jericho was destroyed and they all came to live with the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jericho, prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 02:25-26
- Joshua 02:20-21
- Joshua 06:17-19
- Matthew 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **15:05** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G4460

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Benjamin, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

Ramoth

Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Ahaziah, Aram, Gad, Jehoshaphat, Jehu, Joram, Jordan River, Judah, refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:71-73
- 1 Kings 22:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Kings 08:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7216, H7418, H7433

Rebekah

Facts:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
- Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negev where Isaac was living.
- For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Aram, Esau, Isaac, Jacob, Nahor, Negev)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Genesis 24:45-46
- Genesis 24:56-58
- Genesis 24:63-65
- Genesis 25:27-28
- Genesis 26:6-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:02** After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to **Rebekah**. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
- **06:06** God told **Rebekah**, "There are two nations inside of you."
- **07:01** As the boys grew up, **Rebekah** loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, **Rebekah** and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau.
- **07:06** But **Rebekah** heard of Esau's plan. So she sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7259

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the "kingdom of Israel" in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, Judah, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21-22
- Matthew 01:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:05** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:06** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, "You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did."
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G4497

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Joseph (OT), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:31-32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:21-22
- Genesis 42:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

Rimmon

Facts:

Rimmon was the name of a man and of several places mentioned in the Bible. It was also the name of a false god.

- A man named Rimmon was a Benjamite from the city of Beeroth in Zebulun. This man's sons murdered Ishbosheth, the crippled son of Jonathan.
- Rimmon was a town in the southern part of Judah, in the region occupied by the tribe of Benjamin.
- The "rock of Rimmon" was a place of safety where the Benjamites went to escape from being killed in a battle.
- Rimmon Perez was an unknown location in the Judean wilderness.
- The Syrian commander Naaman spoke of the temple of the false god Rimmon, where the king of Syria worshiped.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Benjamin, Judea, Naaman, Syria, Zebulun)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- 2 Samuel 04:5-7
- Judges 20:45-46
- Judges 21:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7417

Rome, Roman

Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: good news, the sea, Pilate, Paul)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 22:25-26
- Acts 28:13-15
- John 11:47-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **32:06** Then Jesus asked the demon, "What is your name?" He replied, "My name is Legion, because we are many." (A "legion" was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4514, G4516

Ruth

Facts:

Ruth was a Moabite woman who lived during the time when judges were leading Israel. She married an Israelite man in Moab after he had moved there with his family because of a famine during the time when judges were leading Israel.

- Ruth's husband died, and some time after that she left Moab to travel with her mother-in-law Naomi, who was returning to her hometown, Bethlehem in Israel.
- Ruth was loyal to Naomi and worked hard to provide food for her.
- She also committed herself to serving the one true God of Israel.
- Ruth married an Israelite man named Boaz and gave birth to a son who became the grandfather of King David. Because King David was an ancestor of Jesus Christ so was Ruth.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, David, judge])

Bible References:

- Matthew 01:4-6
- Ruth 01:3-5
- Ruth 03:8-9
- Ruth 04:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7327, G4503

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called "Salt Lake."
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or "salts") that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name "Dead Sea."
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the "Sea of Arabah" and the "Sea of Negev" because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, Arabah, , Jordan River, Moab, Negev)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 03:17
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H4417

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:4-5
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

Samson

Facts:

Samson was one of the judges, or deliverers, of Israel. He was from the tribe of Dan.

- God gave Samson superhuman strength, which he used to fight against Israel's enemies, the Philistines.
- Samson was put under a vow to never cut his hair and to never drink wine or any other fermented drink. As long as he kept this vow, God continued to give him strength.
- He finally broke his vow and allowed his hair to be cut, enabling the Philistines to capture him.
- While Samson was in captivity, God enabled him to regain his strength and gave him the opportunity to destroy the temple of the false god Dagon, along with many Philistines.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: deliver, Philistines, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 13:24-25
- Judges 16:1-2
- Judges 16:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8123, G4546

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Hannah, judge, judges, judgment, judgments, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:19-20
- 1 Samuel 09:23-24
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- Acts 03:24-26
- Acts 13:19-20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G4545

Sarah, Sarai

Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 17:15-16
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:01** "So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **05:04** "'Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son--he will be the son of promise.'"
- **05:04** "God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **05:05** "About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G4564

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 09:1-2
- 2 Samuel 01:1-2
- Acts 13:21-22
- Psalm 018:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:01** **Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:04** **Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:05** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G4549

Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

Facts:

The "Sea of Galilee" is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the "Sea of Kinnereth."

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus' life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the "Sea of Tiberias" and the "lake of Gennesaret."
- This term could also be translated as "lake in the region of Galilee" or "Lake Galilee" or "lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret)."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Capernaum, Galilee, Jordan River, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- John 06:1-3
- Luke 05:1-3
- Mark 01:16-18
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: Arabia. Canaan, Egypt)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:04** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:05** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**."
- **13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

Sennacherib

Facts:

Sennacherib was a powerful king of Assyria who caused Nineveh to become a rich, important city.

- King Sennacherib is known for his wars against Babylon and the kingdom of Judah.
- He was a very arrogant king and he ridiculed Yahweh.
- Sennacherib attacked Jerusalem during the time of King Hezekiah.
- Yahweh caused Sennacherib's army to be destroyed.
- The Old Testament books of Kings and Chronicles record some of the events of Sennacherib's reign.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Hezekiah, Judah,
mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at
, Nineveh)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 32:1
- 2 Chronicles 32:16-17
- 2 Kings 18:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: Sennacherib

Seth

Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abel, Cain, call, calls, calling, called, descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, ancestor, flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:1-4
- Luke 03:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G4589

Sharon, Plain of Sharon

Facts:

Sharon was the name of a flat, fertile area of land along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, south of Mount Carmel. It is also known as the "Plain of Sharon."

- Several cities mentioned in the Bible were located on the Plain of Sharon, including Joppa, Lydda, and Caesarea.
- This could be translated as "the plain called Sharon" or "Sharon Plain."
- People who lived in the region of Sharon were called "Sharonites."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Caesarea, Carmel, Joppa, the sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:16-17
- Acts 09:33-35
- Isaiah 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8289, H8290

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There were also several men named "Sheba" listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, Beersheba, Ethiopia, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
- 1 Kings 10:1-2
- Isaiah 60:6-7
- Psalms 072:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5434, H7614

Shechem

Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: Hamor

(See also: Canaan, Esau, Hamor, Hivite, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:14-16
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:18-20
- Genesis 37:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

Shem

Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Arabia, ark, flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters, Noah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:30-31
- Genesis 11:10-11
- Luke 03:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8035, G4590

Shiloh

Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication, Hannah, Jerusalem, Jordan River, priest, priests, priesthood, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, Samuel, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- 1 Samuel 01:9-10
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Judges 18:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7886, H7887

Shimei

Definition:

Shimei was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Shimei son of Gera was a Benjamite who cursed King David and threw stones at him as he was fleeing Jerusalem to escape being killed by his son Absalom.
- There were also several Levite priests in the Old Testament who were named Shimei.

(See also: Absalom, Benjamin, Levite, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:16-18
- 1 Kings 01:7-8
- 2 Samuel 16:13-14
- Zechariah 12:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8096, H8097

Shinar

Facts:

Shinar means "country of two rivers" and was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

- Shinar later became known as "Chaldea" and then, "Babylonia."
- Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
- Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called "Chaldea."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babel, Babylon, Chaldea, Mesopotamia, patriarch, patriarchs, Ur)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:8-10
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- Zechariah 05:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8152

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Noah, Phoenicia, the sea, Tyre)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20-21
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:20-22
- Matthew 15:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

Silas, Silvanus

Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

- The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Antioch, Barnabas, Jerusalem, Paul, Philippi,
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
, testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:12-14
- 1 Thessalonians 01:1
- 2 Thessalonians 01:1-2
- Acts 15:22-23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:02** She (Lydia) invited Paul and **Silas** to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- **47:03** Paul and **Silas** often met with people at the place of prayer.
- **47:07** So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and **Silas** to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- **47:08** They put Paul and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and **Silas** and asked, "What must I do to be saved?"
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and **Silas** visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4609, G4610

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Christ, dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication, Jacob, Judah, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33-34
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 02:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

Simon the Zealot

Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, disciple, disciples, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

Sinai, Mount Sinai

Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, Egypt, Horeb, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:01** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H5514, G3735, G4614

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:12-13
- Matthew 10:14-15
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G4670

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27-28
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:27-29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

Stephen

Facts:

Stephen is most remembered as the first Christian martyr, that is, the first person to be killed because of his faith in Jesus. The facts about his life and death are recorded in the book of Acts.

- Stephen was appointed by the early Church in Jerusalem to serve the Christians as a deacon by providing food for widows and other Christians in need.
- Certain Jews falsely accused Stephen of speaking against God and against the laws of Moses.
- Stephen boldly spoke the truth about Jesus the Messiah, beginning with the history of God's dealings with the people of Israel.
- The Jewish leaders were furious and executed Stephen by stoning him to death outside the city.
- His execution was witnessed by Saul of Tarsus, who later became the apostle Paul.
- Stephen is also well-known for his last words before he died, "Lord, please do not hold this sin against them," which showed the love he had for others.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, appoints, appointed, deacon, deacons, Jerusalem, Paul, stone, stones, stoning, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 06:10-11
- Acts 06:12-15
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 22:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4736

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, "succoth" (or "sukkoth") means "shelters."

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:46-47
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 08:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5523, H5524

Syria

Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, commander, commanders, Damascus,
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, Elisha,
leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous, Naaman,
persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:22-23
- Acts 15:39-41
- Acts 20:1-3
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H130, H726, H758, H761, H762, H804, H1834, H4601, H7421, G4947, G4948

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar was the name of several women in the Old Testament. It was also the name of several cities or other places in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, ancestor, Amnon, David, ancestor, Judah, Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:3-4
- 2 Samuel 13:1-2
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Matthew 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

Tarshish

Facts:

Tarshish was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a city.

- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.
- The city of Tarshish was a very prosperous port city, whose ships carried valuable products to buy, sell, or trade.
- This city was associated with Tyre and is thought to have been a Phoenician city that was somewhat distant from Israel, perhaps on the southern coast of Spain.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Esther, Japheth, Jonah, Nineveh, Phoenicia, wise men)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 02:14-16
- Jeremiah 10:8-10
- Jonah 01:1-3
- Psalms 048:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

Tarsus

Facts:

Tarsus was a prosperous city in the Roman province of Cilicia, in what is now south central Turkey.

- Tarsus was located along a major river and near the Mediterranean Sea, so it was part of an important trade route.
- At one time it was the capital of Cilicia.
- In the New Testament, Tarsus was best known as the hometown of Paul the apostle.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cilicia, Paul, province, provinces, provincial, the sea)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 09:28-30
- Acts 11:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5018, G5019

Terah

Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia, Nahor, Sarah, Shem, Ur)

Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32

- 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
- Luke 03:33-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8646, G2291

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, people group,
prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians

Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the "Thessalonians."

- The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
- Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
- Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Macedonia, Paul, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:1
- 2 Thessalonians 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Acts 17:1-2
- Philippians 04:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2331, G2332

Thomas

Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, disciple, disciples, God the Father, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2381

Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, appoints, appointed,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief,
church, churches, Church, Greek, to minister, ministry)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 01:1-2
- Acts 16:1-3
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Philemon 01:1-3
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Philippians 02:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5095

Tirzah

Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir, kingdom of Israel, Manasseh, Shechem)

Bible References:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:10-12
- Song of Solomon 06:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8656

Titus

Facts:

Titus was a Gentile. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

- A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
- In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
- In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, appoints, appointed,
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief,
church, churches, Church,
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision, Crete,
elder, elders, encourage,
instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors,
to minister, ministry)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Galatians 02:1-2
- Galatians 02:3-5
- Titus 01:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5103

Troas

Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

- Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
- On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
- When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia,
preach, preached, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations
, province, provinces, provincial, raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose, Rome, scroll, scrolls, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 16:6-8
- Acts 20:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5174

Tubal

Facts:

There were several men in the Old Testament who had the name "Tubal."

- One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
- A man named "Tubal-Cain" was a son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
- Tubal was also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain,
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, Ezekiel, Isaiah
, Japheth, Lamech, people group,
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:5-7
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8422, H8423

Tychicus

Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, beloved, Colossae, Ephesus,
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, good news, to minister, ministry)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Colossians 04:7-9
- Titus 03:12-13

{{tag>publish ktlink}

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5190

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, cedar, cedars, cedarwood, Israel, the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20-21
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:20-22
- Matthew 15:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

Ur

Facts:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

- Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
- Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Chaldea, Euphrates River, Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H218

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Bathsheba, David, Hittite)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:4-6
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 03:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H223, G3774

Uzziah, Azariah

Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as "Azariah."

- King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
- As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
- Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Judah, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous, reign, reigns, reigned, reigning, watchtower, watchtowers, tower)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 14:20-22
- Amos 01:1-2
- Hosea 01:1-2
- Isaiah 06:1-2
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5814, H5818, H5838, H5839

Vashti

Facts:

In the Old Testament book of Esther, Vashti was the wife of Ahasuerus, king of Persia.

- King Ahasuerus sent Queen Vashti away when she refused to obey his order to come to his dinner party and show off her beauty to his drunken guests.
- As a result, a search went out for a new queen and eventually Esther was chosen to be the king's new wife.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Esther, Persia)

Bible References:

- Esther 01:9-11
- Esther 02:1-2
- Esther 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2060

Zacchaeus

Facts:

Zacchaeus was a tax collector from Jericho who climbed a tree in order to be able to see Jesus who was surrounded by a large crowd of people.

- Zacchaeus was completely changed when he believed in Jesus.
- He repented of his sin of cheating people and promised to give half his possessions to the poor.
- He also promised that he would pay people back four times the amount that he had overcharged them for their taxes.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, promise, promises, promised, repent, repents, repented, repentance, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, tax, taxes, taxed, taxing, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector, tax collectors,, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Luke 19:1-2
- Luke 19:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2195

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark of the covenant, David, Jotham, Nehemiah, reign, reigns, reigned, reigning, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G4524

Zebedee

Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

- Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
- James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, disciples, fishermen, James (son of Zebedee), John (the apostle))

Bible References:

- John 21:1-3
- Luke 05:8-11
- Mark 01:19-20
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 20:20-21
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2199

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name "Zebulun" is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Leah, Salt Sea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:19-21
- Isaiah 09:1-2
- Judges 04:10
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G2194

Zechariah (NT)

Facts:

In the New Testament, Zechariah was a Jewish priest who became the father of John the Baptist.

- Zechariah loved God and obeyed him.
- For many years Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, prayed earnestly to have a child, but did not have one. Then when they were very old, God answered their prayers and gave them a son.
- Zechariah prophesied that his son John would be the prophet who would announce and prepare the way for the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Elizabeth, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 01:21-23
- Luke 01:39-41
- Luke 03:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:01** Suddenly an angel came with a message from God to an old priest named **Zechariah**. **Zechariah** and his wife, Elizabeth, were godly people, but she had not been able to have any children.
- **22:02** The angel said to **Zechariah**, "Your wife will have a son. You will name him John."
- **22:03** Immediately, **Zechariah** was unable to speak.
- **22:07** Then God allowed **Zechariah** to speak again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2197

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerrubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the temple during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Darius, Ezra, Jehoshaphat, Jeroboam, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel)

Bible References:

- Ezra 05:1-2
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Zechariah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Babylon, Ezekiel, kingdom of Israel, Jehoiachin, Jeremiah, Josiah, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:15-16
- Jeremiah 37:1-2
- Jeremiah 39:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

Zephaniah

Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Jeremiah, Josiah, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:18-19
- Jeremiah 52:24-25
- Zechariah 06:9-11
- Zephaniah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6846

Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity, Cyrus, Ezra, high priest, Jehoiakim, Joshua, Judah, Nehemiah, Persia, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- Ezra 02:1-2
- Ezra 03:8-9
- Luke 03:27-29
- Matthew 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

Zoar

Facts:

Zoar was a small city where Lot fled when God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

- It was formerly known as "Bela" but was renamed "Zoar" when Lot asked God to spare this "small" city.
- Zoar is thought to have been located in the plain of the Jordan River or at the southern end of the Dead Sea.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Lot, Sodom, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 34:1-3
- Genesis 13:10-11
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 19:21-22
- Genesis 19:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6820

Other

abyss, bottomless pit

Definition:

The term "abyss" refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

- In the Bible, "the abyss" is a place of punishment.
- For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
- The word "abyss" could also be translated as "bottomless pit" or "deep chasm."
- This term should be translated differently from "hades," "sheol," or "hell."

(See Also: Hades, hell, lake of fire,
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished)

Bible References:

- Luke 08:30-31
- Romans 10:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: G12, G5421

acacia

Definition:

The term "acacia" is the name of a common shrub or tree growing in the land of Canaan in ancient times; it is still plentiful in that region today.

- The orange-brown wood of the acacia tree is very hard and durable, making it a useful material for building things.
- This wood is highly resistant to decay because it is so very dense that it keeps out water, and it has natural preservatives that keep insects from destroying it.
- In the Bible, acacia wood was used to build the tabernacle and the ark of the covenant.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ark of the covenant, tabernacle)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 38:6-7
- Isaiah 41:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7848

accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations

Definition:

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

Bible References:

- Acts 19:38-41
- Hosea 04:4-5
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H8799, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted

Facts:

The term "acknowledge" means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

- To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
- People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
- To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of acknowledging that something is true, "acknowledge" could be translated as "admit" or "declare" or "confess to be true" or "believe."
- When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as "accept" or "recognize the value of" or "tell others that (the person) is faithful."
- In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as "believe and obey God" or "declare who God is" or "tell other people about how great God is" or "confess that what God says and does is true."

(See also:
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:38-39
- Jeremiah 09:4-6
- Job 34:26-28
- Leviticus 22:31-33
- Psalm 029:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3045, H3046, H5046, H5234, H6942, G1492, G1921, G3670

acquit, acquits, acquitted

Definition:

The term "acquit" means to formally declare someone to be not guilty of an unlawful or immoral behavior he was accused of.

- This term is sometimes used in the Bible to talk about forgiving sinners.
- Often the context is about wrongly acquitting people who are wicked and rebel against God.
- This could be translated as "declare innocent" or "judge to be not guilty."

(See also: forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, guilt, guilty, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 25:1-2
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 23:6-9
- Isaiah 05:22-23
- Job 10:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3444, H5352, H5355, H6403, H6663

administration, administrator, administrators, administered, administering

Facts:

The terms "administration" and "administrator" refer to managing or governing of people of a country to help it function in an orderly way.

- Daniel and three other Jewish young men were appointed to be administrators, or government officials, over certain parts of Babylon.
- In the New Testament, administration is" one of the gifts of the Holy Spirit.
- A person who has the spiritual gift of administration is able to lead and govern people as well as supervise the maintenance of buildings and other property.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "administrator" could include "governor" or "organizer" or "manager" or "ruler" or "government official."
- The term "administration" could be translated as "governing" or "management" or "leadership." or "organization."
- Expressions such as "in charge of" or "taking care of" or "keeping order" could possibly be part of the translation of these terms.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, gift, gifts,
govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls,
Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Daniel 06:1-3
- Esther 09:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5532, H5608, H5632, H6213, H7860, G2941

admonish

Definition:

The term "admonish" means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually "admonish" means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word "admonish" could be translated as "encourage not to sin" or "urge someone to not sin."

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 09:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2094, H5749, G3560, G3867, G5537

adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- Adversary may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a tronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Isaiah 09:11-12
- Job 06:21-23
- Lamentations 04:12-13
- Luke 12:57-59
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

advice, advise, advised, advisor, advisors, counsel, counselor, counselors, counsels

Definition:

The terms "counsel" and "advice" have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise "counselor" or "advisor" is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, "advice" or "counsel" could also be translated as "help in deciding" or "warnings" or "exhortations" or "guidance."
- The action, to "counsel" could be translated as to "advise" or to "make suggestions" or to "exhort."
- Note that "counsel" is a different word than "council," which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, exhortation, Holy Spirit, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H2940, H3245, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H5843, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1010, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4824, G4825

afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous, plague, plagues, suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Amos 05:12-13
- Colossians 01:24-27
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G4777, G4778, G5003

age, ages, aged

Definition:

The term "age" refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "at many years old" or "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:26-28
- 1 Corinthians 02:6-7
- Hebrews 06:4-6
- Job 05:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2465, G165, G1074

alarm, alarms, alarmed

Facts:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To "be alarmed" is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression "sound an alarm" means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

Translation Suggestions

- To "alarm someone" means to "cause someone to worry" or to "worry someone."
- To "be alarmed" could be translated as "be worried" or "be frightened" or "be very concerned."
- The expression "sound an alarm" could be translated by "publicly warn" or "announce that danger is coming" or "blow a trumpet to warn about danger."

(See also: Jehoshaphat, Moab)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 04:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7321, H8643

alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
- Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17-18
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:24-27
- Luke 17:17-19
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

alms

Definition:

The term "alms" refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

- Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
- Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
- This term could be translated as "money" or "gifts to poor people" or "help for the poor."

Bible References:

- Acts 03:1-3
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1654

altar of incense, incense altar

Facts:

The altar of incense was a piece of furniture on which a priest would burn incense as an offering to God. It was also called the golden altar.

- The altar of incense was made of wood, and its top and sides were covered with gold. It was about a half meter long, a half meter wide, and one meter tall.
- At first it was kept in the tabernacle. Then it was kept in the temple.
- Every morning and evening a priest would burn incense on it.
- This can also be translated as "altar for burning incense" or "golden altar" or "incense burner" or "incense table."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: incense, incenses)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4196, H7004, G2368, G2379

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."
- Related words include "marvelous" (amazing, wonderful), "amazement," and "astonishment."
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs, sign, signs, proof, reminder)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28-29
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H4923, H5953, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8078, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, H8653, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G3167, G4023, G4423, G4592, G5059

ambassador, ambassadors, representative, representatives

Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. The word is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as "representative."

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term "representative" refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ's "ambassadors" or "representatives" since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "official representative" or "appointed messenger" or "chosen representative" or "God's appointed representative."
- A "delegation of ambassadors" could be translated as "some official messengers" or "group of appointed representatives" or "official party of people to speak for all people."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: messenger, messengers)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 14:31-33
- Luke 19:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3887, H4135, H4136, H4397, H6735, H6737, G4243

ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, sons, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 07:31-32
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 22:3-5
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Hebrews 07:4-6

- John 04:11-12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:6-7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

anger, angered, angry

Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."

(See also: wrath, fury)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:13-14
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Psalms 018:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

anguish

Definition:

The term "anguish" refers to severe pain or distress.

- Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
- Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
- For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
- The term "anguish" could also be translated as "emotional distress" or "deep sorrow" or "severe pain."

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 06:23-24
- Jeremiah 19:6-9
- Job 15:22-24
- Luke 16:24
- Psalms 116:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2342, H2479, H3708, H4164, H4689, H4691, H5100, H6695, H6862, H6869, H7267, H7581, G928, G3600, G4928

archer, archers

Definition:

The term "archer" refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this, such as "bow-man."

(See also: Assyria)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Isaiah 21:16-17
- Job 16:13-14
- Proverbs 26:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1167, H1869, H2671, H2686, H3384, H7198, H7199, H7228

armor, armory

Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:10-11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:21-23
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2185, H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance

Definition:

The term "arrogant" means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, acknowledges, acknowledged, admit, admitted, boast, boasts, boastful, proud, proudly, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:17-18
- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Proverbs 16:5-6
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1346, H1347, H6277

ash, ashes, dust

Facts:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

- In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
- An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
- When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
- When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
- Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots, sackcloth)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:9-10
- Jeremiah 06:25-26
- Psalms 102:9-10
- Psalms 113:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H665, H666, H766, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

asleep, fall asleep, fell asleep, fallen asleep, sleep, sleeps, slept, sleeping, sleeper, sleepless, sleepy

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead." (See: Metaphor)
- The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To "sleep with one’s fathers" means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was "sleeping" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:13-15
- Acts 07:59-60
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Psalms 044:23-24
- Romans 13:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: hyperbole)

(See also: council, councils)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14-16
- Acts 07:38-40
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign

Facts:

The term "assign" or "assigned" refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would "assign" the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses "assigned" to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, "assign" could be translated as "give" or "appoint" or "choose for the task of."
- The term "assigned" could be translated as "appointed" or "given the task."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, appoints, appointed, Samuel, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:48
- Daniel 12:12-13
- Jeremiah 43:11-13
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Numbers 04:27-28
- Psalms 078:54-55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2506, H3335, H4487, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G3307

astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, led astray, stray, strayed, strays

Definition:

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
- To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:7-8
- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Psalms 058:3-5
- Psalms 119:109-110

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105

avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

- Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
- When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
- Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
- When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished, just, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:46-47
- Romans 12:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349,

G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

awe, awesome

Definition:

The term "awe" refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term "awesome" describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were "awesome" or "awe-inspiring."
- Typical human responses showing awe of God's presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: fear, fears, afraid, glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:19-21
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Hebrews 12:27-29
- Psalm 022:22-23
- Psalms 147:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H366, H1481, H3372, H6206, H7227, G2124

ax, axes

Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
- Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:7-8
- 2 Kings 06:4-5
- Judges 09:48-49
- Luke 03:9
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Psalm 035:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1631, H4621, H7134, G513

banquet

Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, "elaborate meal" or "important feast" or "multi-course meal."

Bible References:

- Daniel 05:10
- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Jeremiah 16:7-9
- Luke 05:29-32
- Song of Solomon 02:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3739, H4797, H4960, H4961, H8354, G1173, G1403

barley

Definition:

The term "barley" refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as "grain called barley" or "barley grain."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, grains, grainfields, thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:38-40
- Judges 07:13-14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

barren

Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:26-27
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Job 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7909, H7921, G692, G4723

basket, baskets, basketfuls

Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."

(See also: ark, Moses, Nile River, Noah)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:32-33
- Acts 09:23-25
- Amos 08:1-3
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

bear, bears

Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: David, Elisha)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1677, G715

bear, bears, bearing, bearer

Facts:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
- To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
- The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
- The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome, Elisha, endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance, fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful, iniquity, iniquities, report, reports, reported, ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins, strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening, testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:25-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5187, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G399, G430, G503, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3114, G3140, G4064, G4160, G4722, G4828, G4901, G5041, G5088, G5297, G5342, G5409, G5576

beast, beasts

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "beast" is often just another way of saying "animal."

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term "livestock" is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include "creature" or "created thing" or "animal" or "wild animal," depending on the context.

(See also: authority, authorities, Daniel, livestock, nation, nations, power, powers, reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

beg, begged, begging, beggar

Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: plea, pleas, plead, pleads, pleaded, pleading, pleadings)

Bible References:

- Luke 16:19-21
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:34-36
- Psalm 045:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:08** "The king called the servant and said, 'You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me."
- **32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, "Please do not send us out of this region!" There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, "Please send us into the pigs instead!"
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused."
- **44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434, G6075

betray, betrays, betrayed, betraying, betrayer, betrayers

Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
- The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: Judas Iscariot, Jewish leaders, apostle, apostles, apostleship)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:51-53
- John 06:64-65
- John 13:21-22
- Matthew 10:2-4
- Matthew 26:20-22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, "One of you will **betray** me." â€¦ Jesus said, "The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**."
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, "Wake up! My **betrayer** is here."

- **38:14** Then Jesus said, "Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?"
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7411, G3860, G4273

blemish, blemishes, unblemished

Facts:

The term "blemish" refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include "defect" or "imperfection" or "sin," depending on the context.

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings,
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:18-19
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 06:13-15
- Song of Solomon 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3971, H8400, H8549, G3470

bloodshed

Definition:

The term "bloodshed" refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means "shedding of blood," which refers to when blood comes out of a person's body from an open wound.
- The term "bloodshed" is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- "The bloodshed" could be translated as "the killing of people" or "the many people who were killed."
- "Through bloodshed" could also be translated as, "by killing people."
- "Innocent bloodshed" could be translated as "killing innocent people."
- "Bloodshed follows bloodshed" could be translated as "they keep killing people" or "the killing of people goes on and on" or "they have killed many people and continue to do that" or "people keep killing other people."
- Another figurative use, "bloodshed will pursue you," could be translated as "your people will continue to experience bloodshed" or "your people will keep being killed" or "your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying."

(See also: blood slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Hebrews 09:21-22
- Isaiah 26:20-21
- Matthew 23:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, G2210

blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe out, wipes out, wiped out

Definition:

The terms "blot out" and "wipe out" are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God "blots out" sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God "blots out" or "wipes out" a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person's name being "blotted out" or "wiped out" of God's Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as "get rid of" or "remove" or "completely destroy" or "completely remove."
- When referring to blotting someone's name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as "removed from" or "erased."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 07:23-24
- Psalm 051:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3971, H4229, G631, G1591, G1813

bold, boldly, boldness, emboldened

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
- The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: confidence, confident, confidently, good news, redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- Acts 04:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H4834, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

Book of Life

Definition:

The term "Book of Life" is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

- Revelation refers to this book as "the Lamb's Book of Life." This could be translated as "the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God." The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people's sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
- The word for "book" can also mean "scroll" or "letter" or "writing" or "legal document." It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: everlasting, lamb, Lamb of God, life, live, lived, lives, living, alive, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, scroll, scrolls)

Bible References:

- Philippians 04:1-3
- Psalms 069:28-29
- Revelation 03:5-6
- Revelation 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2416, H5612, G976, G2222

bow and arrow, bows and arrows

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:14-16
- Habakkuk 03:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:3-4
- Psalms 058:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, humbles, humbled, humility, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Genesis 44:14-15
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:4-5
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Revelation 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4781, G4794

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche)
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 27:33-35
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 06:37-38
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

breastplate, breastplates, breastpiece

Definition:

The term "breastplate" refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term "breastpiece" refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A "breastplate" used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The "breastpiece" worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term "breastplate" could include "metal protective chest covering" or "armor piece protecting the chest."
- The term "breastpiece" could be translated with a word that means "priestly clothing covering the chest" or "priestly garment piece" or "front piece of priest's clothing."

(See also: armor, armory, high priest, pierce, pierces, pierced, piercing, priest, priests, priesthood, temple, soldier, soldiers, warrior, warriors)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17-18
- Revelation 09:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2833 , H8302, G2382

breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "breathe" and "breath" are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God "breathed into" Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to "receive the Spirit," he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms "breathing" and "breathing out" are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression "breath of God" or "breath of Yahweh" often refers to God's wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "breathed his last" is a figurative way of saying "he died." It could also be translated as "he took his last breath" or "he stopped breathing and died" or "he breathed in air one last time."
- Describing the Scriptures as "God-breathed" means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate "God-breathed" somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of "God-breathed" is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include "inspired by God" or "authored by God" or "spoken by God." It could also be said that "God breathed out the words of Scripture."
- The expressions "put breath in" or "breathe life into" or "gives breath to" could be translated as "cause to breathe" or "make alive again" or "enable them to live and breathe" or "give life to."
- If possible, it is best to translate "breath of God" with the literal word that is used for "breath" in the language. If God cannot be said to have "breath," this could be translated as "God's power" or "God's speech."
- The expression "catch my breath" or "get my breath" could be translated as "relax in order to breathe more slowly" or "stop running in order to breathe normally."
- The expression "is only a breath" means "lasts a very short time."
- Similarly the expression "man is a single breath" means "people live a very short time" or "the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath" or "compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air."

(See also: Adam, Paul, word of God, life, live, lived, lives, living, alive)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:17-18
- Ecclesiastes 08:8-9
- Job 04:7-9
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 13:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, H7309, G1709, G1720, G4157

bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery

Definition:

To "bribe" means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus' empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, "bribe" could be translated as, "dishonest payment" or "payment for lying" or "price for breaking the rules."
- To "bribe" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, to "pay to influence (someone)" or to "pay to have a dishonest favor done" or to "pay for a favor."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Ecclesiastes 07:7
- Isaiah 01:23
- Micah 03:9-11
- Proverbs 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8641, G5260

bride, brides, bridal

Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: bridegroom, bridegrooms, church, churches, Church)

Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16-17
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

bridegroom, bridegrooms

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride, brides, bridal)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:29-30
- Luke 05:33-35
- Mark 02:18-19
- Mark 02:20-21
- Matthew 09:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

bronze

Definition:

The term "bronze" refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called "casting."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, armory, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:15-17
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Genesis 49:14-15
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Matthew 23:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H92, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4858, H4864, H4942, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G1117, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, altars, atonement, atone, atones, atoned, ox,
priest, priests, priesthood,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- Mark 12:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

bury, buries, buried, burying, burial

Definition:

The term "bury" usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term "burial" is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms "burial place" or "burial room" or "burial chamber" or "burial cave" are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase "buried his face" usually means "covered his face with his hands."
- Sometimes the word "hide" can mean "bury" as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also:Jericho, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:32-33
- Luke 16:22-23
- Matthew 27:6-8
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

camel, camels

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome,
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:23-25
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H1581, G2574

captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

Definition:

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as, "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
- The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as, "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
- The term "captives" could also be translated as, "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
- Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as, "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: Babylon, exile, exiles, exiled,
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
, seize, seizes, seized, seizure)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5-6
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 43:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out

Definition:

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
- To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."

(See also: demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, demon-possessed, lots, casting lots)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:28-29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24-25
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

caught up, caught up with, catch up with

Definition:

The term "caught up" often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

- The phrase "caught up with" refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is "overtake."
- The apostle Paul talked about being "caught up" to the third heaven. This could also be translated as "taken up."
- Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be "caught up" together to meet him in the air.
- The figurative expression, "my sins have caught up with me" could be translated as, "I am receiving the consequences of my sin" or "because of my sin I am suffering" or "my sin is causing me trouble."

(see: miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs,
overtake, overtakes, overtaken, overtook,
suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings,
trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
- Acts 08:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1692, G726

cedar, cedars, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, firs, pure, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:12-13
- Zechariah 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

census

Definition:

The term "census" refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

- The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
- Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
- For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
- When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

Translation Suggestions

- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "name counting" or "list of names" or "enrollment."
- The phrase "take a census" could be translated as "register people's names" or "enroll people" or "write down people's names."

(See also: nation, nations, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:35-37
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Luke 02:1-3
- Numbers 04:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3789, H5674, H5921, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

chaff

Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called "winnowing."
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: grain, grains, grainfields, wheat, winnow, winnows, winnowed, winnowing, sift, sifting)

Bible References:

- Daniel 02:34-35
- Job 21:16-18
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G892

chariot, chariots, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29-31
- Acts 08:36-38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 41:42-43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

cherub, cherubim, cherubs

Definition:

The term "cherub," and its plural form "cherubim," refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cherubim" could be translated as "creatures with wings" or "guardians with wings" or "winged spiritual guardians" or "holy, winged guardians."
- A "cherub" should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, "creature with wings" or "winged spiritual guardian," for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "angel."
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel, angels, archangel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:5-6
- 1 Kings 06:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 09:3-4
- Genesis 03:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G5502

chief priests

Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: chief, chiefs, high priest, Jewish leaders, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 22:30
- Acts 26:12-14
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 08:31-32
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:59-61
- Matthew 27:41-42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3548, H7218, G749

chief, chiefs

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: chief priests, priest, priests, priesthood, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:1-2
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

chronicles

Definition:

The term "chronicle" refers to a written record of events over a period of time.

- Two Old Testament books are called "First Book of the Chronicles" and "Second Book of the Chronicles."
- The books called "Chronicles" record part of the history of the Israelite people, beginning with a list of people in every generation since Adam.
- The "First Book of the Chronicles" records the end of King Saul's life and the events of King David's reign.
- The "Second Book of the Chronicles" records the reigns of King Solomon and several other kings, including the building of the temple and the separation of the northern kingdom of Israel from the southern kingdom of Judah.
- The end of 2 Chronicles describes the beginning of the Babylonian exile.

(See also: Babylon, David, exile, exiles, exiled, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- Esther 10:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah,
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
, strife)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:15-17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18

- Genesis 16:13-14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H883, H953, H1360, H3653, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

citizen, citizens, citizenship

Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as "inhabitant" or "official resident."
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called "citizens" of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

(See: kingdom, kingdoms, Paul, province, provinces, provincial, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 03:1-3
- Luke 15:15-16
- Luke 19:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

clan, clans

Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: family, families, Jethro, tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40-43
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

Bible References:

- Luke 24:48-49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H1545, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4346, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2439, G2440, G3608, G4016, G4470, G4616, G4683, G4749, G5509, G6005

column, columns, pillar, pillars

Definition:

The term "pillar" usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for "pillar" is "column."

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word "pillar" sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a "carved image" and could be translated as "statue."
- The term "pillar" is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the "pillar of fire" that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the "pillar of salt" that Lot's wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term "pillar" or "column" could be translated as "upright stone support beam" or "supporting stone structure."
- Other uses of "pillar" could be translated as "statue" or "pile" or "mound" or "monument" or "tall mass," depending on the context.

(See also: found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations, false god, image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

comfort, comforts, comforted, comforting, comforter, comforters, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
- In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
- A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
- The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
- When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
- The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
- An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:3-4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G2174, G3870,

G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

commander, commanders

Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled, centurion, centurions)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14-16
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment

Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
- To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
- The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
- The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made."

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, promise, promises, promised, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:6-7
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Psalm 058:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

companion, companions

Facts:

The term "companion" refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, "friend" or "fellow traveler" or "supporting-person who goes with."

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Hebrews 01:8-9
- Proverbs 02:16-17
- Psalms 038:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2271, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G4791, G4898, G4904

conceive, conceives, conceived, conception

Definition:

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as, "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term "conception" could be translated as, "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: create, womb, wombs)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:34-35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G1722, G2602, G2845, G4815

concubine, concubines

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:6-7
- Genesis 22:23-24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:9-12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3904, H6370

confidence, confident, confidently

Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
- The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
- The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, bold, boldly, boldness, emboldened, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, hope, hoped, hopes, trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H985, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G1340, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

confirm, confirms, confirmed, confirmation

Definition:

The terms "confirm" and "confirmation" refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, covenants, new covenant,
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by,
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21-22
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H553, H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G1991, G2964, G3315, G4300, G4972

consume, consumes, consumed, consuming

Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
- When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
- The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
- When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
- If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
- The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: devour, devours, devoured, devouring, wrath, fury)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:8-10
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H1497, H1846, H2000, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3631, H3857, H4127, H4529, H4743, H5486, H5487, H5595, H6244, H6789, H7332, H7646, H7829, H8046, H8552, G355, G1159, G2618, G2654,

G2719, G5315, G5723

contempt, contemptible

Facts:

The term "contempt" refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called "contemptible."

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called "contemptible" and could be translated as "greatly disrespectful" or "completely dishonorable" or "deserving scorn."
- To "hold in contempt" means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: "have contempt for" or "show contempt for" or "be in contempt of" or "treat with contempt." These all mean to "strongly disrespect" or "strongly dishonor" something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had "shown contempt for" God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable)

Bible References:

- Daniel 12:1-2
- Proverbs 15:5-6
- Psalms 031:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H936, H937, H959, H963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G1848

corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness, false witnesses

Definition:

The terms "false witness" and "corrupt witness" refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A "false testimony" or "false report" is the actual lie that is told.
- To "bear false witness" means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bear false witness" or "give a false testimony" could be translated as "testify falsely" or "give a false report about someone" or "speak falsely against someone" or "lie."
- When "false witness" refers to a person, it could be translated as "person who lies" or "one who testifies falsely" or "someone who says things that are not true."

(See also: testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Exodus 20:15-17
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 027:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility

Definition:

The terms "corrupt" and "corruption" refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term "corrupt" literally means to be "bent" or "broken" morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "corrupt" could be translated as to "influence to do evil" or to "cause to be immoral."
- A corrupt person could be described as a person "who has become immoral" or "who practices evil."
- This term could also be translated as "bad" or "immoral" or "evil."
- The term "corruption" could be translated as "the practice of evil" or "evil" or "immorality."

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:11-12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1097, H1605, H2254, H2610, H4167, H4743, H4889, H4893, H7843, H7844, H7845, G853, G861, G862, G1311, G1312, G2585, G2704, G4550, G4595, G5349, G5351, G5356

council, councils

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
- To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means, "wise advice."

(See also: assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled, counsel, Pharisee, law, priest, priests, priesthood, Sadducee, scribe, scribes)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20-21
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 22:66-68
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 26:59-61

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, H7277, G1010, G4824, G4892

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, take courage, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging

Facts:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: confidence, confident, confidently, exhort, exhortation, fear, fears, afraid,

strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25-27
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13-14
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, tabernacle , temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:54-55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:24-26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, H8651, G833, G933, G2681, G4259

cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
- In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke, yokes, yoked)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15-16
- Luke 14:4-6

- Hebrews 09:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

create, creates, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: God, good news, world, worldly)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15-17

- Galatians 06:14-16
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

creature, creatures

Definition:

The term "creature" refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing "living creatures" in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term "creation" has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term "creature" only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "creature" could be translated as, "being" or "living being" or "created being."
- The plural, "creatures" could be translated as "all living things" or "people and animals" or "animals" or "human beings."

(See also: create)

Bible References:

- Daniel 04:10-12
- Ezekiel 01:7-9
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H255, H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G2226, G2937, G2938

crime, crimes, criminal, criminals

Definition:

The term "crime" usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term "criminal" refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone's property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:8-10
- Hosea 06:8-9
- Job 31:26-28
- Luke 23:32
- Matthew 27:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G156, G1462, G2556, G2557, G4467

crown, crowns, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, to "honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
- If a person is "crowned" this could be translated as "a crown was put on his head."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, olive, olives)

Bible References:

- John 19:1-3
- Lamentations 05:15-16
- Matthew 27:27-29
- Philippians 04:1-3
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Revelation 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries

Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: call, calls, calling, called,
plea, pleas, plead, pleads, pleaded, pleading, pleadings)

Bible References:

- Job 27:8-10
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H603, H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7769, H7771, H7773, H7775, H8173, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

cupbearer, cupbearers

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a "cupbearer" was a king's servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- The literal meaning of this term is "cup bringer" or "someone who brings the cup."
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity, Persia , Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 01:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8248

cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. Thsi kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:14-16
- Acts 08:6-8
- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 06:17-19
- Luke 08:43-44
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, "And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel's enemies."

- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, "I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!"
- **44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah."
- **49:02**] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3444, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G4991, G5198, G5199

curtain, curtains

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "curtain" refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of "linen" which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "curtain covering" or "covering" or "piece of thick cloth" or "animal skin covering" or "hanging piece of cloth."

(See also: holy place, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Leviticus 04:16-17
- Luke 23:44-45
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Numbers 04:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

cut off, cuts off, cutting off

Definition:

The expression "be cut off" is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
- Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- Proverbs 23:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257

cypress

Definition:

The term "cypress" refers to a kind of fir tree that was plentiful in the regions where people lived in Bible times, especially countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea.

- Cyprus and Lebanon are two places that are specifically mentioned in the Bible as having many cypress trees.
- The wood that Noah used to build the ark may have been cypress.
- Because cypress wood is sturdy and long-lasting, it was used by ancient peoples for building boats and other structures.

(See also: ark, Cyprus, fir, firs, Lebanon)

Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Genesis 06:13-15
- Hosea 14:7-8
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:12-13
- Zechariah 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8645

darkness

Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also:
corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility,
dominion, kingdom, kingdoms,
light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened,
redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer,
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- 2 Samuel 22:10-12
- Colossians 01:13-14
- Isaiah 05:29-30

- Jeremiah 13:15-17
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

day, days

Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:4-6
- Daniel 10:4-6
- Ezra 06:13-15
- Ezra 06:19-20
- Matthew 09:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called "deceit."

- Another term "deception" also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:13-15
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13

- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:62-64
- Micah 06:11-12

{{tag>publish review}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations

Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "declare" could also be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could also be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: proclaim)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:23-24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:15-16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H262, H559, H560, H816, H874, H952, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6575, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G394, G518, G669, G1107, G1213, G1229, G1335, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1732, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3853, G3870, G3955, G5319, G5419

decree, decrees, decreed

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations, law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, proclaim)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:12-13
- Esther 01:21-22
- Luke 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word "dedication" refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem's repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term "dedicate" could also be translated as "specially assign a special purpose" or "commit something to be used for a specific use" or "commit someone to do a special task."

(See also: commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

deer, doe, does, fawns, roebuck, roebucks

Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term "doe" refers to a female deer and a "fawn" is the name of a baby deer.
- The term "buck" refers to a male deer.
- A "roebuck" is the male of the specific variety called "roedeer."
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:34-35
- Genesis 49:19-21
- Job 39:1-2
- Psalms 018:33-34
- Song of Solomon 02:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H354, H355, H365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled

Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
- To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also:
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
,
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

delight, delights, delighted, delightful

Definition:

A "delight" is something that pleases someone greatly or causes much joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "take joy in" or "be happy about" it.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- If a persons delight is in something it means that he enjoys it very much.
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30-31
- Psalm 001:1-2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

deliver, delivers, delivered, delivering, deliverer, deliverance

Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: judge, judges, judgment, judgments, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:8-10
- Acts 07:35-37
- Galatians 01:3-5
- Judges 10:10-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.

- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1350, H2020, H2502, H3052, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4560, H4672, H5337, H5338, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6308, H6403, H6405, H6413, H6475, H6487, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8000, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G859, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23-25
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** "The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel."
- **04:09** "I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**."
- **05:10** "Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky."
- **17:07** "Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!"
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

desecrate, desecrated, desecrating

Definition:

The term "desecrate" means to damage or contaminate a sacred place or object in such a way that it is unacceptable for use in worship.

- Often desecrating something involves showing great disrespect for it.
- For example, pagan kings desecrated special dishes from God's temple by using them for parties at their palace.
- Bones from dead people were used by enemies to desecrate the altar in God's temple.
- This term could be translated as "cause to be unholy" or "dishonor by making impure" or "disrespectfully profane" or "cause to be impure."

(See also: altar, altars,
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled,
dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable, profane, profaned, profaning, pure,
temple, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Bible References:

- Acts 24:4-6
- Isaiah 30:22
- Psalms 074:7-8
- Psalms 089:38-40

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2610, H2930, G953

desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:37-38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14-15
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:1-3
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

desolate, desolation, desolations

Definition:

The terms "desolate" and "desolation" refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term "desolate" describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term "desolation" is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A "desolate region" refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."

(See also: desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, devastate, ruin, ruins, ruined, waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:17-19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:9-11
- Luke 11:16-17
- Matthew 12:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H816, H820, H910, H1327, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4876, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7612, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

destine, destined, destiny, predestined

Definition:

The term "destiny" refers to what will happen to people in the future. If someone is "destined" to do something, it means that what that person will do in the future has been decided by God.

- When God "destines" a nation for wrath, this means that he has decided or chosen to punish that nation because of their sin.
- Judas was "destined" for destruction, which means that God had decided that Judas would be destroyed because of his rebellion.
- Every person has a final, eternal destiny, either in heaven or in hell.
- When the writer of Ecclesiastes says that everyone's destiny is the same, he means that all people eventually die.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "destine you for wrath" could also be translated as "decided that you will be punished" or "determined that you will experience my wrath."
- The figurative expression "they are destined for the sword" could be translated as "God has decided that they will be destroyed by enemies who will kill them with swords" or "God has determined that their enemies will kill them with swords."
- The phrase "you are destined for" could be translated using a phrase like "God has decided that you will be."
- Depending on the context, "destiny" could be translated as "final end" or "what will happen in the end" or "what God has decided will happen."

(See also: captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity, everlasting, heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, hell, lake of fire, John (the Baptist), repent, repents, repented, repentance)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- Ecclesiastes 02:13-14
- Hebrews 09:27-28
- Philippians 03:17-19
- Psalms 009:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2506, H4150, H4487, H4745, H6256, H4507, G5056, G5087

destroy, destroys, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying

Definition:

The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."

- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:27-28
- Jeremiah 06:25-26
- Judges 16:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2717, H7843, H7703, G3645

detest, detested, detestable

Facts:

The term "detestable" describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To "detest" something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word "detestable" to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to "detest" the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts "detestable."
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all "detestable" to God.
- The term "detest" could be translated as "strongly reject" or "hate" or "regard as very evil."
- The term "detestable" could also be translated as "horribly evil" or "disgusting" or "deserving rejection."
- When applied to the righteous being "detestable to" the wicked, this could be translated as "considered very undesirable to" or "distasteful to" or "rejected by."
- God told the Israelites to "detest" certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be "unclean" and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as "strongly dislike" or "reject" or "regard as unacceptable."

(See also: divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer,
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
)

Bible References:

- Genesis 43:32-34
- Jeremiah 07:29-30
- Leviticus 11:9-10
- Luke 16:14-15
- Revelation 17:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1602, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946, G947, G948, G4767, G5723, G3404

devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations

Definition:

The term "devastated" or "devastation" refers to having one's property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term "devastation" can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "devastate" could be translated as "completely destroy" or "completely ruin."
- Depending on the context, "devastation" could be translated as "complete destruction" or "total ruin" or "overwhelming grief" or "disaster."

Bible References:

- Daniel 08:24-25
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Zephaniah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1110, H1238, H2721, H1826, H3615, H3772, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7843, H8074, H8077

devour, devours, devoured, devouring

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:8-9
- Amos 01:9-10
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "spiritual death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or

"execute."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, faith, life, live, lived, lives, living, alive, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:20-21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:19-20
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Colossians 02:20-23
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Romans 05:10-11
- Romans 05:12-13
- Romans 06:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G615, G622, G684, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

discern, discerned, discerning, discernment

Definition:

The term "discern" means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term "discernment" refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "discern" could also be translated as "understand" or "know the difference between" or "distinguish good and evil" or "judge rightly about" or "perceive right from wrong."
- "Discernment" could be translated as "understanding" or "ability to distinguish good and evil."

(See also: judge, judges, judgment, judgments, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 01:4-6
- Psalms 019:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G350, G1252, G1253, G1381, G2924

disgrace, disgraces, disgraced, disgraceful

Facts:

The term "disgrace" refers to a loss of honor and respect.

- When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- The term "disgraceful" is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
- For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- Ways to translate "disgrace" could include "shame" or "dishonor."
- Ways to translate "disgraceful" could include "shameful" or dishonoring."

(See also: dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable, honor, honors, shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- Genesis 34:6-7
- Hebrews 11:23-26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H954, H1984, H2490, H2617, H2659, H2781, H2865, H3637, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6031, H7036, G149, G819, G3680, G3856

dishonor, dishonors, dishonored, dishonorable

Definition:

The term "dishonor" means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term "dishonorable" describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes "dishonorable" is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as to "not honor" or to "treat with no respect."
- The noun "dishonor" could be translated as "disrespect" or "loss of honor."
- Depending on the context, "dishonorable" could also be translated as "not honorable" or "shameful" or "not worthwhile" or "not valuable."

(See also: disgrace, disgraces, disgraced, disgraceful, honor, honors)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:10-11
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- John 08:48-49
- Leviticus 18:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6172, H6173, H7034, H7036, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G2617

disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: authority, authorities, evil, wicked, wickedness,
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:20-22
- Acts 26:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me."
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

disperse, dispersion

Definition:

The terms "disperse" and "dispersion" refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about "dispersing" people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term "dispersion" is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase "the dispersion" could be translated as "believers in many different places" or "the people who moved away to live in different nations."
- The term "disperse" could be translated as "send away into many different places" or "scatter abroad" or "cause to move away to live in different countries."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Psalms 018:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H4127, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G1287, G1290, G4650

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms "divination" and "soothsaying" refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a "diviner" or "soothsayer."

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, false god,
magic, magical, magician, magicians,
sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:1-2
- Acts 16:16-18
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

divorce

Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to "divorce" means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to "divorce" is to "send away" or to "formally separate from." Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A "certificate of divorce" could be translated as a "paper stating that the marriage has ended."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

doctrine

Definition:

The word "doctrine" literally means "teaching." It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, "doctrine" refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word "doctrine" is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as "teaching."

(See also: teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3948, H4148, H8052, G1319, G1322, G2085

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:3-4
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15-16
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

doom

Definition:

The term "doom" refers to a judgment of condemnation with no possibility of appeal or escape.

- As the nation of Israel was being taken captive into Babylon, the prophet Ezekiel said, "doom has come upon them."
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "disaster" or "punishment" or "hopeless ruin."

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 07:5-7
- Ezekiel 30:8-9
- Isaiah 06:4-5
- Psalms 092:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1820, H3117, H6256, H6843, H8045

doorpost

Definition:

The "doorpost" is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master's house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as "wooden post on either side of a door" or "sides of a wooden doorframe" or "wood beams on the sides of a doorway."

(See also: Egypt, Passover)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:31-32
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Exodus 12:5-8
- Isaiah 57:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H4201

dove, pigeon

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)".
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: olive, olives, innocent, pure)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:8-9
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:9-11
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 21:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision, visions, envision)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Genesis 37:5-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Matthew 02:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:28-30
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14-15
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:12-14
- Luke 07:33-35
- Luke 21:34-35
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7302, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

dung, manure

Definition:

The term "dung" refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called "manure."

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression "be like dung on the face of the earth" could be translated as "be scattered like worthless dung over the land."
- The "Dung Gate" in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also:
gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- 2 Kings 06:24-26
- Isaiah 25:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H830, H1119, H1557, H1561, H1686, H1828, H6569, H6675, G906, G4657

eagle, eagles

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: Daniel, free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty, Nebuchadnezzar, power, powers)

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:23-24
- Daniel 07:4-5
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- Revelation 04:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, H7360, G105

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: spirit, spirits, spiritual, world, worldly)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51-53
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Zechariah 06:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

elder, elders

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14-16
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23-26
- Mark 11:27-28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance

Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
- The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
- In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be tranlsated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
- Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:1-3
- James 01:12-13
- Luke 21:16-19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Revelation 01:9-11
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H3885, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2553, G2594, G3114, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound

Definition:

To "enslave" someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be "enslaved" or "in bondage" means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To "enslave" also means to take away a person's freedom.
- Another word for "bondage" is "slavery."
- In a figurative way, human beings are "enslaved" to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "enslave" could be translated as "cause to not be free" or "force to serve others" or "put under the control of others."
- The phrase "enslaved to" or "in bondage to" could be translated as "forced to be a slave of" or "forced to serve" or "under the control of."

(See also: free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness, enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:3-5
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Definition:

The word for "servant" can also mean "slave" and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave. The word for "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship." In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

(See also: commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment, enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound, household, households, lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs, obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient , righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness, covenant, covenants, new covenant, law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles ,)

Bible References

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the

Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."

- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

envy, covet

Definition:

The term "envy" refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities. The term "covet" means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse.

(See also: jealous, jealousy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:1-3
- Exodus 20:15-17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

epistle, letter, letters

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: encourage, exhort, exhortation,
teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, H6600, G1121, G1989, G1992

evildoer, evildoers, evildoing

Definition:

The term "evildoer" is a general reference to people who do sinful and wicked things.

- It can also be a general word for people who do not obey God.
- This term could be translated using the word for "evil" or "wicked," with the word for "doing" or "making" or "causing" something.

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:13-17
- Isaiah 09:16-17
- Luke 13:25-27
- Malachi 03:13-15
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H6213, H6466, H7451, H7489, G93, G458, G2038, G2040 , G2555

ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, Lamb of God,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings,
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32-33
- Genesis 30:31-32
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 15:3-5
- Mark 06:33-34
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 12:11-12
- Matthew 25:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.

- **38:08** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

exile, exiles, exiled

Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
- The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
- Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:13-14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

exult, exults, exulting, exultant

Definition:

The terms "exult" and "exultant" refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To "exult" includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God's goodness.
- The term "exultant" can also include being arrogant in one's feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term "exult" could also be translated as "celebrate joyfully" or "praise with great joy."
- Depending on the context, the term "exultant" could be translated as "praising triumphantly" or "celebrating with self praise" or "arrogant."

(See also: arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance,
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
, praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy, rejoice)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:1
- Isaiah 13:1-3
- Job 06:10-11
- Psalm 068:1-3
- Zephaniah 02:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5539, H5947, H5970

face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown

Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them

directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

false prophet, false prophets

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: fulfill, fulfilled, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:1-3
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5578

family, families

Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, clans, ancestor,
house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- Exodus 01:20-22
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

famine, famines

Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who detroy crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11-13
- Genesis 12:10-13
- Genesis 45:4-6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25-27
- Matthew 24:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings

Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:33-35
- Mark 02:18-19
- Matthew 06:16-18
- Matthew 09:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** "'For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.'"
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G777, G3521, G3522, G3523

feast, feasts, feasting

Definition:

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: festival, festivals)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30-31
- Genesis 29:21-22
- Genesis 40:20-23
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:41-44
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

Facts:

In the Old Testament, the "fellowship offering" was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal that could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering, which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the "peace offering."

(See also: burnt offering, fulfill, fulfilled, grain offering, guilt offering, peace offering, priest, priests, priesthood,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, unleavened bread,
vow, vows, vowed)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- Numbers 06:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8002

festival, festivals

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
    - Passover
    - Festival of Unleavened Bread
    - Firstfruits
    - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
    - Festival of Trumpets
    - Day of Atonement
    - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast, feasts, feasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Exodus 05:1-2
- John 04:43-45
- Luke 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

fig, figs

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 13:6-7
- Mark 11:13-14
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

fir, firs

Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: cedar, cedars, cedarwood, cypress)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Isaiah 37:24-25
- Isaiah 41:19-20
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:12-13
- Psalms 104:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:5-7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

firstborn

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "first-born" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, son, sons)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:32-34
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

firstfruits

Definition:

The term "firstfruits" refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the "firstfruits" of all believers in him, belivers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the "firstfruits" of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as "first portion (of crops)" or "first part of the harvest."
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- Psalms 105:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

fishermen, fishers

Definition:

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term "fishers" is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as "men who catch fish" or "men who earn money by catching fish."

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Isaiah 19:7-8
- Luke 05:1-3
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 13:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1728, H1771, H2271, G231, G1903

flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids, ox, pig, pigs, pork, swine, ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins,)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30-32
- Matthew 26:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters

Definition:

The term "flood" literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah's time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in "the land was flooded by river water."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of "flood" could include "an overflowing of water" or "large amounts of water."
- The figurative comparison "like a flood" could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression "like a flood of water" where water is already mentioned, the word "flood" could be translated as "an overwhelming amount" or "an overflowing."
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in "do not let the flood sweep over me," which means "do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me" or "don't let me be devastated by disasters" or "don't let your anger devastate me." (See: Metaphor)
- The figurative expression "I flood my bed with tears" could be translated as "my tears cover my bed with water like a flood."

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 07:6-7
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:24-25
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H2229, H2230, H2975, H3999, H5104, H5140, H5158, H5674, H6556, H7641, H7857, H7858, H8241, G2627, G4132, G4215, G4216

flute, flutes, pipe, pipes

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a "flute."
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds, shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7-9
- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 11:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

footstool

Definition:

The term "footstool" refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a "footstool" was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says "I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet" he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
- To "worship at God's footstool" means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God's "footstool." This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:41-44
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 22:43-44
- Psalm 110:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

The terms "foreknew" and "foreknowledge" come from the verb "foreknow" which means to know something before it happens.

- God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
- This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "foreknew" could also be translated as, "knew before" or "knew ahead of time" or "knew beforehand" or "already knew."
- The term "foreknowledge" could be translated as, "knowing before" or "knowing ahead of time" or "already knowing" or "knowing in advance."

(See also:
know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
, predestine, predestined)

Bible References:

- Romans 08:28-30
- Romans 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4267, G4268

found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations

Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: cornerstone, cornerstones, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:28-30
- Matthew 13:34-35
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H803, H808, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H6884, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing

Definition:

The terms "fountain" and "spring" usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term "flood" is translated.

(See also: flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Genesis 07:11-12
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Genesis 24:12-14
- Genesis 24:42-44
- James 03:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H794, H953, H1530, H1543, H1876, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H6780, H7823, H8444, H8666, G242, G305, G393, G985, G1530, G1816, G4077, G4855, G5453

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G3030

free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound, enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362,

H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G572, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486

freewill offering, freewill offerings

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, Ezra, feast, feasts, feasting, grain offering, guilt offering, law, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is "fruitful" has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term "fruitful" always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term "fruitful" is also used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces--"that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural ,"fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a

different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, grain, grains, grainfields, grape, grapes, grapevine, Holy Spirit, vine, vines, womb, wombs)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

furnace

Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: false god,
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- Genesis 19:26-28
- Proverbs 17:3-4
- Psalms 021:9-10
- Revelation 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G2575

gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The "gate bar" refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 09:23-25
- Acts 10:17-18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- Matthew 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

generation

Definition:

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
- "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
- The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
- "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, evil, wicked, wickedness, ancestor)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Mark 08:11-13
- Matthew 11:16-17
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34-35

giant, giants

Definition:

The word "giant" usually refers to a person who is extremely tall and strong.

- Goliath, a Philistine soldier who fought David, was called a giant because he was a very tall, large, and strong man.
- The Israelite spies who explored the land of Canaan said that the people living there were like giants.

(See also: Canaan, Goliath, Philistines)

Bible References:

- Genesis 06:4
- Numbers 13:32-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1368, H5303, H7497

gird, girded

Definition:

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
- The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13-14
- Job 38:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H640, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G2224, G4024

glean, gleans, gleaned, gleanings

Definition:

The term "glean" means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God told the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain.
- A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate "glean" can be "pick up" or "gather" or "collect."

(See also: Boaz, grain, grains, grainfields, harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters, Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:5-7
- Ruth 02:1-2
- Ruth 02:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins,
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness,
wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:31-32
- Genesis 31:10-11
- Genesis 37:31-33
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H1601, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H6939, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, altars, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:6-7
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:14-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Daniel 02:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

gossip, gossips, gossiper, talk nonsense

Definition:

The term "gossip" refers to talking to people about someone else's personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

- The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
- Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone's relationships with other people.

(See also: slander, slanders, slandered, slanderers, slandering, slanderous)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:11-13
- 2 Corinthians 12:20-21
- Leviticus 19:15-16
- Proverbs 16:27-28
- Romans 01:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5372, G2636, G5397

govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls

Definition:

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
- Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
- The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: authority, authorities, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, power, powers, province, provinces, provincial, Rome, rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22-24
- Acts 26:30-32
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:16-18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

grain offering, grain offerings

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering ,
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19-20
- Leviticus 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

grain offering, grain offerings, meal offerings

Definition:

A "meal offering" or "grain offering" was a sacrifice to God in the form of grain or bread made out of grain flour.

- The term "meal" refers to grain that has been ground up into flour.
- The flour was mixed with water or oil to make a flat bread. Sometimes oil was spread on top of the bread.
- This kind of offering was usually offered together with a burnt offering.

(See also: burnt offering, grain, grains, grainfields, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 44:30-31
- Joel 02:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

grain, grains, grainfields

Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also:
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:1-2
- Mark 02:23-24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

grape, grapes, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individiual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: vine, vines, vineyard, vineyards,
wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:31-33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H2490, H3196, H5563, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, buries, buried, burying, burial,
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:5-6
- Genesis 50:4-6
- John 19:40-42
- Luke 23:52-53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Romans 03:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put Lazarus?" They told him, "In the **tomb**. Come and see."
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to

the ground like dead men.

- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, "Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see." The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1164, H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G86, G2750, G3418, G3419, G5028

groan, groans, groaned, groaning, groanings

Definition:

The term to "groan" refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate "groan" could include, "give a low cry of pain" or "grieve deeply."
- As a noun, this could be translated as, "a low cry of distress" or "a deep murmur of pain."

(See also: cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:1-3
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Job 23:1-2
- Psalms 032:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H584, H585, H602, H603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G1690, G4726, G4727, G4959

guilt offering, guilt offerings

Definition:

A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:3-4
- 2 Kings 12:15-16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Numbers 06:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817

had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: Euphemism)

- The expression "sleep with" someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is "slept with."
- In the Old Testament book "Song of Solomon," the ULB uses the term "lovemaking" to translate the word "love," which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression "make love to."

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate "sleep with": "lie with" or "make love to" or "be intimate with."
- Other ways to translate "have relations with" could include "have sexual relations with" or "have marital relations with."
- The term "lovemaking" could also be translated as "loving" or "intimacy." Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: sexual immorality)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:1-2
- 1 Samuel 01:19-20
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Matthew 01:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H160, H935, H1540, H2181, H2233, H3045, H3212, H6172, H7250, H7901, H7903, G1097

hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm

Facts:

This term usually refers to lumps of frozen water that fall from the sky. Although spelled the same way in English, a different word, "hail" is used in greeting someone and can mean, "hello" or "greetings to you."

- Hail that comes down from the sky is in the form of balls or chunks of ice called "hailstones."
- Usually hailstones are small (only a few centimeters wide), but sometimes there are hailstones that are as big as 20 centimeters wide and that weigh over a kilogram.
- The book of Revelation in the New Testament describes enormous hailstones weighing 50 kilograms that God will cause to fall on earth when he judges people for their wickedness in the end times.
- The word "hail" that is a formal greeting in older English literally means "rejoice" and could be translated as "Greetings!" or "Hello!"

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

Bible References:

- Matthew 27:27-29
- Matthew 28:8-10
- Psalms 078:47-49
- Psalms 148:7-8
- Revelation 08:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H417, H1258, H1259, G5463, G5464

hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?" (See: metonymy)
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
    - To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
    - To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
    - The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
    - The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their

enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies, bless, blessed, blessing, captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity, honor, honors, power, powers)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 08:14-17
- Acts 11:19-21
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Genesis 14:19-20
- John 03:34-36
- Mark 07:31-32
- Matthew 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung

Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39-41
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 40:20-23
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness

Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions "hard heart" or "hard-headed" refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions "hardness of heart" and "hardness of their hearts" also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone's heart is "hardened" this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in "work hard" or "try hard," it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "hard" could also be translated as "difficult" or "stubborn" or "challenging," depending on the context.
- The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
- The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
- "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
- Other ways to translate "hard-headed" or "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
- In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
- The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
- To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
- A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient,

evil, wicked, wickedness, heart, hearts, labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Hebrews 04:6-7
- John 12:39-40
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H280, H386, H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5539, H5564, H5646, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6277, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G1425, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912, G4927

harp, harps, harpist, harpists

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: David, fir, firs, psalm, psalms, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters

Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: firstfruits, festival, festivals)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:10-11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9-10
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

haughty

Definition:

The term "haughty" means to be prideful or arrogant. Someone who is "haughty" thinks too highly of himself.

- Often this term describes a proud person who persists in sinning against God.
- Usually a person who is haughty boasts about himself.
- A haughty person is foolish, not wise.
- This term could also be translated as "proud" or "arrogant" or "self-centered."
- The figurative expression "haughty eyes" could also be translated as "proud way of looking" or "looking at others as less important" or "proud person who looks down on others."

(See also: boast, boasts, boastful, proud, proudly, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- Isaiah 02:17-19
- Proverbs 16:17-18
- Proverbs 21:23-24
- Psalm 131:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H1363, H1364, H3093, H4791, H7312

head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations." This could be translated as "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over..."
- Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for "head" is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph. (See: synecdoche)
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: grain, grains, grainfields)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

heir, heirs

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Genesis 15:1-3
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:13-14
- Mark 12:6-7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

high place, high places

Definition:

The term "high places" refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "elevated places for idol worship" or "hilltop idol shrines" or "idol altar mounds."
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: altar, altars, false god, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 09:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:3-4
- Amos 04:12-13
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Ezekiel 06:1-3
- Habakkuk 03:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1116, H1181, H1354, H2073, H4791, H7311, H7413

holy city, holy cities

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "holy city" refers to the city of Jerusalem.

- This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
- This term can be translated by combining the terms for "holy" and "city" that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Matthew 04:5-6
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 22:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5892, H6944, G40, G4172

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:6-7
- Proverbs 05:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G2781, G3192, G3193

hoof, hoofs, hooves

Facts:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

- An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
- Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
- God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: camel, camels, cow, ox, donkey, mule,
goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids, pig, pigs, pork, swine,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 14:6-7
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Leviticus 11:3-4
- Psalms 069:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6119, H6471, H6536, H6541, H7272

horn, horns, horned

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.
- The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: authority, authorities,
cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen,
deer, doe, does, fawns, roebuck, roebucks, goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids,
power, powers royal, royalty,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins,
trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Jeremiah 17:1-2
- Psalms 022:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's:H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

horror, horrors, horrible, horribly, horrified, horrifying

Definition:

The term "horror" refers to a very intense feeling of fear or terror. The person who is feeling horror is said to be "horrified."

- Horror is more dramatic and intense than ordinary fear.
- Usually when someone is horrified they are also in shock or stunned.

(See also: fear, fears, afraid,
terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- Ezekiel 23:33-34
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Job 21:4-6
- Psalms 055:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H1091, H1763, H2152, H2189, H4032, H4923, H5892, H6343, H6427, H7588, H8047, H8074, H8175, H8178, H8186

horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, chariots, charioteers, , donkey, mule, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Kings 02:11-12
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

horseman, horsemen

Definition:

In Bible times, the term "horsemen" referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called "horsemen," though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as "horse riders" or "men on horses."

(See also: chariot, chariots, charioteers, horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:5-6
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

hour, hours

Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes "hour" refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the "hour of prayer."
- When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen--the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term "hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
- When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
- The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
- The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."

(See also: hour)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:29-30
- Acts 10:30-33
- Mark 14:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8160, G5610

hour, hours

Definition:

The term "hour" is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean "time" or "moment."

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, "the ninth hour" meant "around three in the afternoon."
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, "the third hour of the night" meant "around nine in the evening" in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as "around nine" or "about six o'clock" could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like "in the evening" or "in the morning" or "in the afternoon" to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, "in that hour" could be translated as, "at that time" or "in that moment."
- Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him to" or "the appointed time for him had come."

Bible References:

- Acts 02:14-15
- John 04:51-52
- Luke 23:44-45
- Matthew 20:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8160, G5610

house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
- "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, house of God, household, households, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:47-50
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 08:38-39
- Matthew 10:5-7

- Matthew 15:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

household, households

Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also:
house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 34:18-19
- John 04:53-54
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Philippians 04:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

humiliate, humiliated, humiliation

Facts:

The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced. This is usually done publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."

- When God in humbling someone it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- To "humiliate" could also be translated as to "shame" or to "cause to feel shame" or to "embarrass."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "humiliation" could include "shame" or "degrading" or "disgrace."

(See also: disgrace, disgraces, disgraced, disgraceful ·
humble, humbles, humbled, humility ·
shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Ezra 09:5-6
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H1421, H2778, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H6030, H6031, H6256, H7034, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8216, H8213, H8217, H8589, G2617, G5014

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

- A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:20-22
- Romans 01:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179, G5481

imitate, imitator, imitators

Definition:

The terms "imitate" and "imitator" refers to copying someone else by acting exactly like that person does.

- Christians are taught to imitate Jesus Christ by obeying God and loving others, just as Jesus did.
- The apostle Paul told the early church to imitate him, just as he imitated Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "imitate" could be translated as "do the same things as" or "follow his example."
- The expression "be imitators of God" could be translated as "be people who act like God does" or "be people who do the kinds of things God does."
- "You became imitators of us" could be translated as "You followed our example" or "You are doing the same kinds of godly things that you saw us do."

Bible References:

- 3 John 01:11-12
- Matthew 23:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H310, H6213, G1096, G2596, G3401, G3402, G4160

incense, incenses

Definition:

The term "incense" refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The "altar of incense" was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate "incense" could include "fragrant spices" or "good-smelling plants."

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4-5
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

inquire, inquires, inquired, inquiries

Facts:

The term "inquire" means to ask someone for information. The expression "inquire of" is often used to refer to asking God for wisdom or help.

- The Old Testament records several instances where people inquired of God.
- The word can also be used of a king or government official making a search through official written records.
- Depending on the context, "inquire" could be translated as "ask" or "ask for information."
- The expression "inquire of Yahweh" could be translated as "ask Yahweh for guidance" or "ask Yahweh what to do."
- To "inquire after" something could be translated as "ask questions about" or "ask for information about."
- When Yahweh says "I will not be inquired of by you," this could be translated as "I will not allow you to ask me for information" or "you will not be permitted to seek help from me."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezra 07:14-16
- Job 10:4-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1240, H1245, H1875, G1830

instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors

Facts:

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
- The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, decree, decrees, decreed, teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught)

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:4-5
- Genesis 26:4-5
- Hebrews 11:20-22
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 11:1-3
- Proverbs 01:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H5657, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, H8738, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2322, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3614, G3615, G3624, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

integrity

Definition:

The term "integrity" refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior is said to have integrity.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "integrity" could also be translated as "honesty" or "moral uprightness" or "behaving truthfully" or "acting in a trustworthy, honest manner."

(See also: Daniel, Joseph (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Job 02:3
- Job 04:4-6
- Proverbs 10:8-9
- Psalm 026:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3476, H6664, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8538, H8549, G4587

interpret, interprets, interpreted, interpreting, interpretation, interpretations, interpreter

Facts:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The "interpretation" of the dream is the "explanation" of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term "interpret" can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term "interpret" could include, "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
- The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream,
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, vision, visions, envision)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:9-11
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

Jewish authorities, Jewish leader

Facts:

The term "Jewish leader" or "Jewish authority" refers to religious leaders such as the priests and teachers of God's laws. They also had the authority to make judgments about non-religious matters as well.

- The Jewish leaders were the high priests, chief priests, and scribes (teachers of God's laws).
- Two main groups of Jewish leaders were the Pharisees and Saduccees.
- Seventy Jewish leaders met together in the Jewish Council in Jerusalem to make judgments about matters of law.
- Many Jewish leaders were proud and thought they were righteous. They were jealous of Jesus and wanted to harm him. They claimed to know God but did not obey him.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" referred to the Jewish leaders, especially in contexts where they were angry at Jesus and were trying to trick or harm him.
- These terms could also be translated as "Jewish rulers" or "men who ruled over the Jewish people" or "Jewish religious leaders."

(See also: Jew, chief priests, council, councils, high priest, Pharisee, priest, priests, priesthood, Sadducee, scribe, scribes)

Bible References:

- Exodus 16:22-23
- John 02:17-19
- John 05:10-11
- John 05:16-18
- Luke 19:47-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** Many **religious leaders** also came to be baptized by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **37:11** But the **religious leaders of the Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the **Jewish leaders** denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **38:03** The **Jewish leaders**, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:05** The **Jewish leaders** all answered the high priest, "He (Jesus) deserves to die!"
- **39:09** Early the next morning, the **Jewish leaders** brought Jesus to Pilate, the

Roman governor.

- **39:11** But the **Jewish leaders** and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!"
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two **Jewish leaders** who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body.
- **44:07** The next day, the **Jewish leaders** brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other **religious leaders**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Psalm 048:1-3

- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:6-7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29-30
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:15-18
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:1-3
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5938, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2620, G2744, G2745, G3685, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Judaism, Jewish religion

Definition:

The term "Judaism" refers to the religion practiced by the Jews. It is also referred to as the "Jewish religion."

- In the Old Testament, the term "Jewish religion" is used, while in the New Testament, the term "Judaism" is used.
- Judaism includes all the Old Testament laws and instructions that God gave to the Israelites to obey. It also includes the customs and traditions that have been added to the Jewish religion over time.
- When translating, the term "Jewish religion" or "religion of the Jews" can be used in both the Old and New Testaments.
- "Judaism," however should only be used in the New Testament, since the term did not exist before that time.

(See also: Jew, law)

Bible References:

- Galatians 01:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2454

judge, judges

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also:
govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls, judge, judges, judgment, judgments, law)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:26-28
- Luke 11:18-20
- Luke 12:13-15
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen

Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

- "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
- This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:19-20
- Ruth 03:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G4773

kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses

Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:20-21
- Genesis 01:24-25
- Mark 09:28-29
- Matthew 13:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
- Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: authority, authorities, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdoms, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- 2 Samuel 05:3-5
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:21-22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 14:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.

- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

kingdom, kingdoms

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, authorities, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36-37
- Mark 03:23-25
- Matthew 04:7-9

- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Revelation 01:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

kiss, kisses, kissed, kissing

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11-12
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Genesis 45:14-15
- Genesis 48:8-10
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 26:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation, understand, understands, understood, understanding, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 2 Corinthians 02:14-15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Luke 01:76-77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1231, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G3877, G4267, G4894

labor, in labor, labor pains

Definition:

A woman who is "in labor" is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called "labor pains."

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers, last day)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:19-20
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Isaiah 13:6-8
- Jeremiah 13:20-21
- Psalms 048:4-6
- Romans 08:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2342, H2470, H3018, H3205, H5999, H6045, H6887, H8513, G3449, G4944, G5088, G5604, G5605

labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."

(See also: hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness, labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:7-9
- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:4-6
- John 04:37-38
- Luke 10:1-2
- Matthew 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H213, H3018, H3021, H3022, H3023, H3205, H5447, H4522, H4639, H5445, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4704, G4866, G4904, G5389

lamp, lamps

Definition:

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, lampstands, life, live, lived, lives, living, alive, light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:34-36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 06:22-24
- Matthew 25:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

lampstand, lampstands

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lampstand" generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as "lamp pedestal" or "structure for holding a lamp" or "lamp holder."
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as "seven-lamp lampstand" or "gold pedestal with seven lamps."
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, golden, lamp, lamps, light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
- This meaning of "law" is different from its meaning in the term "law of Moses," where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, "law" could be translated as "principle" or "general rule."

(See also:
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, law)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:1-2
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:4-5
- John 18:31-32
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

lawful, lawfully, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

- In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
- To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
- The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that

means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
- Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
- The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
- The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
- The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
- The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
- It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also:
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, law, Moses, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Matthew 12:9-10
- Mark 03:3-4
- Luke 06:1-2
- Acts 02:22-24
- Acts 10:27-29
- Acts 22:25-26
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4941, H6530, H6662, H7386, H7990, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

learned men, astrologers

Definition:

In Matthew's account of the birth of Christ, the "learned" or "educated" men were the "wise men" who brought gifts to Jesus in Bethlehem sometime after his birth there. They may have been "astrologers," people who study the stars.

- These men traveled a long way from a country far to the east of Israel. It is not known exactly where they came from or who they were. But they were obviously scholars who had studied the stars.
- They may have been descendants of the wise men who served the Babylonian kings in Daniel's time and who were trained in many things, including studying the stars and interpreting dreams.
- Traditionally it has been said that there were three wise men or learned men because of the three gifts they brought to Jesus. However, the Bible text does not say how many there were.

(See also: Babylon, Bethlehem, Daniel)

Bible References:

- Daniel 02:27-28
- Daniel 05:7
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 02:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1505, G3097

leopard, leopards

Facts:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: beast, beasts, Daniel, prey, prey on, vision, visions, envision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 07:6-7
- Hosea 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Song of Solomon 04:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5245, H5246

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

Definition:

The term "leprosy" is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A "leper" is a person who has leprosy. The term "leprous" describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered "unclean" and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out "unclean" so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "leprosy" in the Bible can be translated as "skin disease" or "dreaded skin disease."
- Ways to translate "leprous" could include "full of leprosy" or "infected with skin disease" or "covered with skin sores."

(See also: Miriam, Naaman,
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 17:11-13
- Mark 01:40-42
- Mark 14:3-5
- Matthew 08:1-3
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 2 Corinthians 04:5-6
- Acts 26:15-18
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- John 01:4-5
- Matthew 05:15-16

- Matthew 06:22-24
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike

Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder." (See: Simile)
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: beast, beasts, flesh, image of God,
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
, perish, perished, perishing, perishable)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:4-6

- Mark 08:24-26
- Matthew 17:1-2
- Matthew 18:1-3
- Psalms 073:4-5
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

lions, lion, lioness, lionesses

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, leopards, Samson,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- Revelation 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

livestock

Facts:

The term "livestock" refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as "farm animals."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, mule, goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids, horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback, ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29-30
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H929, H4399, H4735

locust, locusts

Facts:

The term "locust" refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity, Egypt, Israel, John (the Baptist), plague, plagues)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:28-31
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 01:4-6
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

loins

Definition:

The term "loins" refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression "gird up the loins" refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term "loins" is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term "loins" often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man's reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression "will come from your loins" could also be translated as, "will be your offspring" or "will be born from your seed" or "God will cause to come from you." (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as "abdomen" or "hips" or "waist," depending on the context.

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, gird, girded, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 06:7-9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34-36
- Job 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2504, H2783, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

lots, casting lots

Definition:

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
- If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, priests, priesthood, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:6-7
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:33-34
- Mark 15:22-24
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H2256, H5307, G2624, G2819, G2975, G3091

lover, lovers

Definition:

The term "lover" literally means "person who loves." Usually this refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.

- When the term "lover" is used in the Bible, it usually refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he or she is not married to.
- This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel's disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term "lovers" is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by "immoral partners" or "partners in adultery" or "idols." [See Metaphor]
- A "lover" of money is someone who puts too much importance on getting money and being rich.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, the term "lover" is used in a positive way.

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, false god, false god, love, loves, loving, loved)

Bible References:

- Hosea 02:4-5
- Jeremiah 03:1-2
- Lamentations 01:1-2
- Luke 16:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H868, H5689, H7453, H8566, G865, G866, G5358, G5366, G5367, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382

lowly, lowliest, lowliness

Definition:

The terms "lowly" and "lowliness" refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- His birth was lowly because he was born in a place where animals were kept, not in a palace.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate "lowly" could include "humble" or "of low status" or "unimportant."
- The word "lowliness" could also be translated as "humility" or "little importance."

(See also: humble, humbles, humbled, humility, proud, proudly, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:17-21
- Ezekiel 17:13-14
- Luke 01:48-49
- Romans 12:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6041, H6819, H8217, G5011, G5012, G5014

lust, lusts, lusted, lusting, lustful

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."
  (See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 Timothy 02:22-23
- Galatians 05:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H185, H310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, H8307, H8378, G766, G1937, G1938, G1939, G1971, G2237, G3715, G3806

lute, lyre, lyres

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modernday acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: harp, harps, harpist, harpists)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

magic, magical, magician, magicians

Definition:

The term "magic" refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A "magician" is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh's magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer, Egypt, Pharaoh, power, powers, sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft)

Bible References:

- Genesis 41:7-8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2748, H2749, H3049, G3097

magistrate, magistrates

Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

- In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "ruling judge" or "legal officer" or "city leader."

(See also: judge, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Acts 16:35-36
- Daniel 03:1-2
- Luke 12:57-59

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6114, H8200, H8614, G758, G3980, G4755

manager, managers, steward, stewards, stewardship

Definition:

The term "manager" or "steward" in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master's property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term "manager" is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "supervisor" or "household organizer" or "servant who manages" or "person who organizes."

(See also:
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 43:16-17
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 16:1-2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G2012, G3621, G3623

mediator

Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
- Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: priest, priests, priesthood, reconcile, reconciles, reconciled, reconciliation)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:5-7
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Hebrews 08:6-7
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Luke 12:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3887, G3312, G3316

meditate, meditates, meditation

Definition:

"The term meditate" means to spend time thinking about something carefully and deeply.

- This term is often used in the Bible to refer to thinking about God and his teachings.
- Psalm 1 says that the person who meditates on the law of the Lord "day and night" will be greatly blessed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "meditate on" could be translated as to "think about carefully and deeply" or to "consider thoughtfully" or to "think about often."
- The noun form is "meditation" and could be translated as "deep thoughts." A phrase like "meditation of my heart" could be translated as "what I think deeply about" or "what I often think about."

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:63-65
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Psalm 001:1-2
- Psalms 119:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1897, H1900, H1901, H1902, H7742, H7878, H7879, H7881, G3191, G4304

meek, meekness

Definition:

The term "meek" describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as "gentle" or "mild-mannered" or "sweet-tempered."
- The term "meekness" could be translated as "gentleness" or "humility."

(See also: humble, humbles, humbled, humility)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Corinthians 10:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:24-26
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Psalms 037:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6035, H6037, H6038, G4235, G4236, G4239, G4240

melt, melted, melting, melts, molten

Facts:

The term "melt" refers to something becoming liquid when it is heated. It is also used in figurative ways. Something that is melted is described as being "molten."

- Different kinds of metals are heated until they melt and can be poured into molds in order to make things such as weapons or idols. The expression "molten metal" refers to a metal that is melted.
- As a candle burns, its wax melts and drips. In ancient times, letters were often sealed by pouring a small amount of melted wax on the edges.
- A figurative use of "melt" means to become soft and weak, like melted wax.
- The expression "their hearts will melt" means that they will become very weak because of fear.
- Another figurative expression "they will melt away" means that they will be forced to go away or they will be shown to be weak and will go away in defeat.
- The literal meaning of "melt" could be translated as "become liquid" or "liquefy" or "cause to become liquid."
- Other ways to translate the figurative meanings of "melt" could include "become soft" or "become weak" or "be defeated."

(See also: heart, hearts, false god,
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
, seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed)

Bible References:

- Psalms 112:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1811, H2003, H2046, H3988, H4127, H4529, H4541, H4549, H5140, H5258, H5413, H6884, H8557, G3089, G5080

member, members

Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: body, bodies, Pharisee, council, councils)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:14-15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Romans 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G1010, G3196, G3609

memorial, memorial offering

Definition:

The term "memorial" refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

- This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a "memorial offering," a "memorial portion" of a sacrifice or "memorial stones."
- In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
- God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God's faithfulness to them.
- In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a "memorial" before God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "lasting reminder."
- A "memorial stone" could be translated as a "stone to remind them (of something)."

Bible References:

- Acts 10:3-6
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Isaiah 66:3
- Joshua 04:6-7
- Leviticus 23:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2142, H2146, G3422

messenger, messengers

Facts:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, apostle, apostles, apostleship, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 11:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- God is also referred to as the "mighty one."
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: Almighty, miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs, power, powers, strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H193, H202, H352, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650,

H1219, H1368, H1369, H1370, H1396, H1397, H1401, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2394, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5868, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H6697, H6743, H7227, H7580, H7989, H8623, H8624, H8632, G972, G1411, G1413, G1414, G1415, G1498, G1752, G1754, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3168, G3173, G5082

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded

Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "changed his mind and went" could also be translated as "decided differently and went" or "decided to go after all" or "changed his opinion and went."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, heart, hearts, soul, souls)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:25-28
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:28-30
- Matthew 22:37-38
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at

Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," and "scoff at" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:27-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, "He deserves to die!" Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God?"
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H5953, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

mold, molds, molded, molding, molder, moldy

Definition:

A mold is a hollowed-out piece of wood, metal, or clay that is used to form objects out of gold, silver, or other materials that can be softened and then shaped by the mold.

- Molds were used to make jewelry, dishes, and utensils for eating, among other things.
- In the Bible, molds are mentioned mainly in connection with molding statues to be used as idols.
- Metals have to be heated to a very high temperature so that they can be poured into the mold.
- To mold something means to form an object into a certain shape or likeness by using a mold or the hands to form a certain shape.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, to "form" or to "shape" or to "make."
- The word "molded" could be translated as "shaped" or "formed."
- The object "mold" could possibly be translated with a phrase or word that means, "shaped container" or "sculpted dish."

(See also: false god, gold, golden, false god, silver)

Bible References:

- Exodus 32:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4541, H4165, G4110, G4111

month, months, monthly

Definition:

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23-26
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully

Facts:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1669, H1671, H1897, H1899, H1993, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H6969, H7300, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

multiply, multiplies, multiplied, multiplying, multiplication

Definition:

The term "multiply" means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to "multiply" and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as "increase" or "cause to increase" or "greatly increase in number" or "become greater in number" or "become more numerous."
- The phrase "greatly multiply your pain" could also be translated as "cause your pain to become more severe" or "cause you to experience much more pain."
- To "multiply horses" means to "greedily keep acquiring more horses" or to "get large numbers of horses."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Genesis 22:15-17
- Hosea 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

mystery, mysteries, hidden truth, hidden truths

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "mystery" refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as "secret" or "hidden things" or "something unknown."

(See also: Christ, Gentile, good news, Jew, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

nation, nations

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 13:19-20
- Acts 17:26-27
- Acts 26:4-5
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5

- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."

(See also: adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies, parable, parables, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:13-15
- James 02:8-9
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:56-58
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Matthew 22:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

new moon, new moons

Definition:

The term "new moon" refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram's horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the "beginning of the month."

(See also: month, earth, earthen, earthly, festival, festivals, horn, horns, horned, ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 1 Samuel 20:4-5
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, G3376, G3561

noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen

Definition:

The term "noble" refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A "nobleman" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Ecclesiastes 10:16-17
- Luke 19:11-12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H678, H1281, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7336, H7261, H8282, H8269, H8321, G937, G2104, G2903

oak, oaks

Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like...," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: How to Translate Unknowns

(See also: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" means is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, covenants, new covenant, vow, vows, vowed)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31

- Luke 01:72-75
- Mark 06:26-29
- Matthew 05:36-37
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:71-72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in "do not steal."

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, citizens, citizenship, command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, kingdom, kingdoms, law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:22-25
- James 02:10-11
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have _*obeyed* _ me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G544, G3980, G3982, G4198, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

offspring

Definition:

The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, seed, semen)

Bible References:

- Acts 17:28-29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:5-7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:23-25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:33-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H2233, H5209, H6363, H6529, H6631, G1081, G1085

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, olives, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1880, H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

olive, olives

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, lamps, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:10-12
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 16:5-7
- Psalms 052:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

on high, in the highest

Definition:

The terms "on high" and "in the highest" are expressions that usually mean "in heaven."

- Another meaning for the expression "in the highest" could be "the most honored."
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression "in the highest tree, " which means "in the tallest tree."
- The expression "on high" could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird's nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as "high in the sky" or "at the top of a tall tree."
- The word "high" could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression "from on high" could be translated as "from heaven."

(See also: heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly, honor, honors)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 01:13-14
- Psalms 069:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G1722, G5308, G5310, G5311

oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: bind, enslave, enslaves, enslaved, bond, bondage, bonds, bound, persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:133-134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

ordain, ordained, ordinary, ordination

Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term "ordain" often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to "ordain" could be translated as to "assign" or to "appoint" or to "command" or to "make a rule" or to "institute."

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, covenant, covenants, new covenant, decree, decrees, decreed, law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
, law, priest, priests, priesthood)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 03:3-4
- Psalms 111:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H4483, H6186, H6213, H6466, H6680, H7760, H8239, G1299, G2525, G2680, G3724, G4270, G4282, G4309, G5021, G5500

ordinance, ordinances

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term "ordain."

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term "ordinance" could be translated as "public decree" or "regulation" or "law," depending on the context.

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, decree, decrees, decreed, law, ordain, ordained, ordinary, ordination, statute, statutes)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H4687, H4931, H4941, G1296, G1345, G1378, G1379, G2937, G3862

oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers

Definition:

The term "overseer" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be "supervisor" or "caretaker" or "manager."
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: church, churches, Church, elder, elders, pastor, pastors, shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- Acts 20:28-30
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

overtake, overtakes, overtaken, overtook

Definition:

The term "overtake" and "overtook" refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

- When military troops "overtake" an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
- When a predator overtakes its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
- If a curse "overtakes" someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to the person
- If blessings "overtake" people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
- Depending on the context, "overtake" could be translated as "conquer" or "capture" or "defeat" or "catch up to" or "completely affect."
- The past action "overtook" can be translated as "caught up to" or "came alongside of" or "conquered" or "defeated" or "caused harm to."
- When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will overtake people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they don't repent.
- The phrase "My words have overtaken your fathers" means that the teachings that Yahweh gave to their ancestors will now cause the ancestors to receive punishment because they failed to obey those teachings.

(See also: bless, blessed, blessing, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, prey, prey on, punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- John 12:34-36

{{tag>publish ktlink}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G2638, G2983

pagan, pagans

Definition:

In Bible times, the term "pagan" was used to describe people who worshiped false gods instead of Yahweh.

- Anything associated with these people, such as the altars where they worshiped, the religious rituals they performed, and their beliefs, were also called "pagan."
- Pagan belief systems often included the worship of false gods and the worship of nature.
- Some pagan religions included sexually immoral rituals or the killing of human beings as part of their worship.

(See also: altar, altars, false god, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, worship, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:14-15
- 2 Kings 21:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G1484

palace, palaces

Definition:

The term "palace" refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: court, courts, courtyard, courtyards, high priest, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H759, H1001, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, H2038, H2918, G833, G933, G4232

palm, palms

Definition:

The term "palm" refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a "date." The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, mule, Jerusalem,
peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

partial, be partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor, favors, favorable, favoritism)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:17-18
- Malachi 02:8-9
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:15-17
- Romans 02:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

patient, patiently, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance, forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

patriarch, patriarchs

Definition:

The term "patriarch" in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

- It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the 12 patriarchs of the 12 tribes of Israel.
- The term "patriarch" has a similar meaning to "forefather," but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: ancestor, father, forefather)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Acts 07:6-8
- Acts 07:9-10
- Ezra 03:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H7218, G3966

peace offering, peace offerings

Facts:

A "peace offering" was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the "thanksgiving offering" or "fellowship offering."

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal's blood on the altar, and burning the animal's fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: burnt offering, fellowship, fellowship offering, grain offering, priest, priests, priesthood, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Joshua 08:30-32
- Leviticus 09:3-5
- Proverbs 07:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8002

peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Luke 07:48-50
- Luke 12:51-53
- Mark 04:38-39
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 10:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.

- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G31514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term "peoples" or "people groups" refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart "a people" for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as "your people" can mean "your people group" or "your family" or "your relatives."
- The term "peoples" is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term "nations" is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, nation, nations, tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen, world, worldly)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53

- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10
- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G246, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "perfect" means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:1-3
- James 03:1-2
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H998, H1584, H1585, H3632, H3634, H4357, H4359, H4512, H8003, H8502, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G195, G197, G199, G739, G1295, G2005, G2675, G2676, G2677, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5052

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment"

(See also: Christian, church, churches, Church,
oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 13:50-52
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:29-31
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:6-7

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with

joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away."

- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!"
- **46:04** But Ananias said, "Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1814, H4783, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms "persevere" and "perseverance" refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has "perseverance" it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like "stubborn" which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: patient, patiently, patience, impatient, trial, trials)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:11-12
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- James 05:9-11
- Luke 08:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3115, G4343, G5281

perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting

Definition:

The term "perverse" is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term "perversely" means "in a perverse manner." To "pervert" something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God's standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate "perverse" could include "morally twisted" or "immoral" or "turning away from God's straight path," depending on the context.
- "Perverse speech" could be translated as "speaking in an evil way" or "deceitful talk" or "immoral way of talking."
- "Perverse people" could be described as "immoral people" or "people who are morally deviant" or "people who continually disobey God."
- The phrase "acting perversely" could be translated as "behaving in an evil way" or "doing things against God's commands" or "living in a way that rejects God's teachings."
- The term "pervert" could also be translated as "cause to be corrupt" or "turn into something evil."

(See also:
corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, incorruptibility, deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive
, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, evil, wicked, wickedness, turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:46-47
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:1-2
- Psalms 101:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1942, H2015, H3399, H3868, H3891, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H5999, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G654, G1294, G3344, G3859

pierce, pierces, pierced, piercing

Definition:

The term "pierce" means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus' side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: cross, Jesus, enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Job 16:13-14
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:36-37
- Psalms 022:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1856, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H4272, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044, G4138

pig, pigs, pork, swine

Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called "pork." The general term for pigs and related animals is "swine."

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a "wild boar." Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as "hogs."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also:
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:20-22
- Mark 05:11-13
- Matthew 07:6
- Matthew 08:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2386, G5519

pit, pits, pitfall

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
- A very deep pit can also be called a "cistern."
- The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, bottomless pit, hell, lake of fire,
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:16-18
- Luke 06:39-40
- Proverbs 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1360, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

plague, plagues

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as "widespread disasters" or "widespread disease," depending on the context.

(See also: hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm, Israel, Moses, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:13-14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:10-11
- Revelation 09:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G3061, G3148, G4127

plant, plants, planted, planting, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow, sows, sowed, sown, sowing

Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "sow" means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A "sower" is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to "sow" could also be translated as to "plant." Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate "sower" could include "planter" or "farmer" or "person who plants seeds."
- In English, "sow" is only used for planting seeds, but the English word "plant" can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could also be translated as "just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person's good actions will bring a good result and a person's evil actions will bring an evil result."

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness, good, goodness, reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping)

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:6-8
- Luke 08:4-6
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:3-6
- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 25:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5300, G5452 , G6037

plea, pleas, plead, pleads, pleaded, pleading, pleadings

Facts:

The terms "plead" and "pleading" refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A "plea" is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include "beg" or "implore" or "urgently ask."
- The term "plea" could also be translated as "urgent request" or "strong urging."
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
- Judges 06:31-32
- Luke 04:38-39
- Proverbs 18:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870

pledge, pledged, pledges

Definition:

The term "pledge" refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- To "pledge" could be translate as to "formally commit to" or to "strongly promise."
- The term "pledge" can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate "a pledge" could include "a solemn promise" or "a formal commitment" or "a guarantee" or "a formal assurance," depending on the context.

(See also: promise, promises, promised,
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by, vow, vows, vowed)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:4-5
- Exodus 22:25-27
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

plow, plows, plowed, plowing, plowers, plowman, plowmen, plowshares, unplowed

Definition:

A "plow" is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: bronze, ox)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Luke 09:61-62
- Luke 17:7-8
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G722, G723

pomegranate, pomegranates

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: bronze, Canaan, Egypt, Solomon, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 08:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Egypt

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Facts:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy' or "live on," depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, "possessions" could be translated as "belongings" or "property" or "owned things" or "things they owned."
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The expression, "found in his possession" could be translated as, "that he was holding" or "that he had with him."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as, "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase, "in his possession" could be translated as "that he owned" or "which belonged to him."

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70

- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:43-45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44-46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:3-4
- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 13:48-49
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46-47
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of

praise to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H6953, H7121, H7150, G1229, G1256, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3853, G3955, G4283, G4296

preach, preached, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations

Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."
- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate "proclaim" could include "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could also be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25-27
- Luke 04:42-44
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41

- Matthew 24:12-14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, "Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!"
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- (foe preach): Strong's: H1319, H6953, H7121, H7150, G1229, G1256, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3955, G4283, G4296
- (for proclaim): H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

precious

Facts:

The term "precious" describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term "precious stones" or "precious jewels" refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called "precious metals."
- Yahweh says that his people are "precious" in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God's sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as "valuable" or "very dear" or "cherished" or "highly valued."

(See also: gold, golden, silver)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:1-2
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H1431, H2532, H2580, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H4901, H5238, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

prey, prey on

Definition:

The term "prey" refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, "prey" can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To "prey on" people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term "prey" could also be translated as "hunted animal" or "hunted one" or "victim."

(See also:
oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 12:7-9
- Psalms 104:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H400, H957, H961, H962, H2863, H2963, H2964, H4455, H5706, H5861, H7997, H7998

prince, princes, princess, princesses

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, authority, authorities, Christ, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs, power, powers, rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled, Satan, Savior, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52-53

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257,

H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7101, H7261, H7333, H7336, H7786, H7991, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G2232, G3175

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments

Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for "prison" is "jail."
- This term could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be "captives."
- Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be, "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive."

(See also: captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4-5
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Luke 12:57-59
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:16-17
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Matthew 14:3-5
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6115, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

profane, profaned, profaning

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
- God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also:
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled,
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred,
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:5-6
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2613, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

profit, profits, profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

(See also: worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless)

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
- The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
- To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
- In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

Bible References:

- Job 15:1-3
- Proverbs 10:16-17
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:62-63
- Mark 08:35-37
- Matthew 16:24-26

- 2 Peter 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term "prosper" generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are "prosperous," it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing "prosperity."

- The term "prosperous" often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term "prosperous" also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A "prosperous" city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God's teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term "prosper" could also be translated as "succeed spiritually" or "be blessed by God" or "experience good things" or "live well."
- The term "prosperous" could also be translated as "successful" or "wealthy" or "spiritually fruitful."
- "Prosperity" could also be translated as "well-being" or "wealth" or "success" or "abundant blessings."

(See also: bless, blessed, blessing, fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- Job 36:10-12
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965, G2137

prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 21:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

prostrate, prostrated

Definition:

The term "prostrate" means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To "fall prostrate" or to "prostrate oneself" before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "prostrated" could include "bowed down low with the face to the ground" or "worshiped him by lying face down in front of him" or "bowed down low to the ground in amazement" or "worshiped."
- The phrase "will not prostrate ourselves" could be translated as "will not worship" or "will not lie face down in worship" or "will not bow down and worship."
- "Prostrate himself to" could also be translated as "worship" or "bow down in front of."

(See also: awe, awesome,
bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28-29
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

proud, proudly, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
- The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
- In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
- To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
- The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
- The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance, humble, humbles, humbled, humility, joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12-14
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19-20
- Luke 01:50-51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, "I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector's prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H2102, H2103, H2121, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7293, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7407, H7830, H8597, G212, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426, G5450

proverb, proverbs

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate "proverb" could include "wise saying" or "true word."

(See also: Solomon, true, truth, truths, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 2 Peter 02:20-22
- Luke 04:23-24
- Proverbs 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

province, provinces, provincial

Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term "provincial" describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a "provincial official" or "provincial governor."
- The terms "province" and "provincial" could also be translated as "region" and "regional."

(See also: Asia, Egypt, Esther, Galatia, Galilee, Judea, Macedonia, Medes, Rome, Samaria, Syria)

Bible References:

- Acts 19:30-32
- Daniel 03:1-2
- Daniel 06:1-3
- Ecclesiastes 02:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

provoke, provokes, provoked, provoking, provocation

Facts:

The term "provoke" means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to "cause to become angry" or to "anger."
- When used in a phrase such as, "do not provoke him," this could be translated as "do not anger him" or "do not cause him to be angry" or "do not make him angry with you."

(See also: anger, angered, angry)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H5496, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, H7265, G653, G2042, G3863, G3893, G3947, G3948, G3949, G4292

prudence, prudent, prudently

Facts:

The term "prudent" describes a person who thinks carefully about his actions and makes wise decisions.

- Often "prudence" refers to the ability to make wise decisions about practical, physical matters, such as in managing money or property.
- Although "prudence" and "wisdom" are similar in meaning, often "wisdom" is more general and focuses on spiritual or moral matters.
- Depending on the context, "prudent" could also be translated as "shrewd" or "careful" or "wise."

(See also: shrewd, shrewdly, spirit, spirits, spiritual, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:4-5
- Proverbs 12:23-24
- Proverbs 27:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H5843, H6175, H6191, H6195, H7080, H7919, H7922, G4908, G5428

puffed up, puffs up

Definition:

The term "puffed up" is a figurative expression that refers to being proud or arrogant. (See: Idiom)

- A person who is puffed up has an attitude of feeling superior to others.
- Paul taught that knowing a lot of information or having religious experiences can lead to being "puffed up" or proud.
- Other languages may have a similar idiom or a different one that expresses this meaning, such as "having a big head."
- This could also be translated as "very proud" or "disdainful of others" or "haughty" or "thinking oneself better than others."

(See also: arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance, proud, proudly, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:6-7
- 1 Corinthians 08:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 12:6-7
- Habakkuk 02:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6075, G5229, G5448

punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions "go unpunished" and "leave unpunished" mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, repents, repented, repentance, righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:9-10
- Acts 04:21-22
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:13-15
- Luke 23:15-17
- Matthew 25:44-46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and

start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.

- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

purple

Facts:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, royalty, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

push, pushed, pushing

Definition:

The term "push" literally means to physically move something away using force. There are also several figurative meanings of this term.

- The expression "push away" can mean "reject" or "refuse to help."
- To "push down" can mean to "oppress" or "persecute" or "defeat." It can also mean that someone is literally being pushed down to the ground.
- To "push someone out" means to "get rid of" or "send away" that person.
- The expression "push ahead" means to persevere or to continue doing something without really making sure it is right or safe.

(See also:
oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
,
persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
, reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1556, H1760, H3276, H3423, H5055, H5056, H5186, H8804, G683, G4261

qualify, qualified, disqualified

Definition:

The term "qualify" refers to earning the right to receive certain benefits or to be recognized as having certain skills.

- A person who is "qualified" for a particular job has the necessary skills and training to do that job.
- In his letter to the Colossian church, the apostle Paul wrote that God the Father has made believers "qualified" to participate in his kingdom of light. This means that God has given them everything they need to live godly lives.
- The believer cannot earn the right to be part of God's kingdom. He is only qualified because God has redeemed him with the blood of Christ.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "qualified" could be translated as "equipped" or "skilled" or "enabled."
- To "qualify" someone could be translated as to "equip" or to "enable" or to "empower."

(See also: Colossae, godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness, kingdom, kingdoms,
light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened, Paul, redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3581

queen, queens

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as "queen mother" usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly. Persia
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled, Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:26-28
- Esther 01:16-18
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

quench, quenched, unquenchable

Definition:

The term "quench" means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term "quench" in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not "quench the Holy Spirit." This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful, gift, gifts, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:19-22
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Isaiah 01:31
- Jeremiah 21:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, H8257, G762, G4570

rage, rages, raged, raging

Facts:

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
- The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."
- When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: anger, angered, angry, self-control)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:23-25
- Daniel 03:13-14
- Luke 04:28-30
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Proverbs 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H1348, H1984, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3491, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7283, H7857, G1693, G2830, G3710, G5433

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, appoints, appointed, exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping

Definition:

The term "reap" means to harvest crops such as grain. A "reaper" is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God's family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person's actions, as in the saying "a man reaps what he plants." (See: Metaphor)
- Other ways to translate to "reap" and "reaper" could include to "harvest" and "harvester" (or "person who harvests").

(See also: good news, harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters)

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:29-30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4672, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2327

rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
- "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
- The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
- The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, authorities,
govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:37-38
- Luke 23:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped

other gods.

- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, "You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

rebuke, rebukes, rebuked

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14-16
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G298, G299, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:1-2
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

reed, reeds

Facts:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:14-16
- Luke 07:24-26
- Matthew 11:7-8
- Matthew 12:19-21
- Psalm 068:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2063, G2563

refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering

Definition:

The term "refuge" refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A "refugee" is someone who is seeking a safe place. A "shelter" refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term "city of refuge" in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A "shelter" is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes "shelter" means "protection," as when Lot said that his guests were "under the shelter" of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "refuge" could be translated as "safe place" or "place of protection."
- "Refugees" are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as "aliens," "homeless people," or "exiles."
- Depending on the context, the term "shelter" could be translated as "something that protects" or "protection" or "protected place."
- If it refers to a physical structure, "shelter" could also be translated as "protective building" or "house of safety."
- The phrase "into safe shelter" could be translated as "into a safe place" or "into a place that will protect."
- To "find shelter" or to "take shelter" or to "take refuge" could be translated as to "find a place of safety" or to "put oneself in a protected place."

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Isaiah 23:13-14
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Psalm 046:1-3
- Psalms 028:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4585, H4733, H4869

reign, reigns, reigned, reigning

Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: kingdom, kingdoms)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection

Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses' leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term "push away" is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G96, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720,

G1609, G3868

renown, renowned

Definition:

The term "renown" refers to the greatness associated with being well known and having a praiseworthy reputation. Something or someone is "renowned" if it has renown.

- A "renowned" person is someone who is well known and highly esteemed.
- "Renown" especially refers to a good reputation that is widely known over a long period of time.
- A city that is "renowned" is often well known for its wealth and prosperity.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "renown" could also be translated as "fame" or "esteemed reputation" or "greatness that is well-known by many people."
- The term "renowned" could also be translated as "well known and highly esteemed" or "having an excellent reputation."
- The expression "May the Lord's name be renowned in Israel" could be translated as "May the Lord's name be well known and honored by the people of Israel."
- The phrase "men of renown" could be translated as "men well known for their courage" or "famous warriors" or "highly esteemed men."
- The expression "your renown endures through all generations" could be translated as "throughout the years people will hear about how great you are" or "your greatness is seen and heard by people in every generation."

(See also: honor, honors)

Bible References:

- Genesis 06:4
- Psalms 135:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1984, H7121, H8034

report, reports, reported

Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:37-38
- Luke 05:15-16
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1426, G1834, G2036, G2162, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

reproach, reproaches, reproached, reproaching, reproachfully

Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is "above reproach" or "beyond reproach" or "without reproach" means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word "reproach" could also be translated as "accusation" or "shame" or "disgrace."
- To "reproach" could also be translated as to "rebuke" or to "accuse" or to "criticize," depending on the context.

(See also:
accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations,
rebuke, rebukes, rebuked,
shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1421, H1442, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H3637, H3639, H7036, G410, G423, G819, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G5195, G5196, G5484

rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something. A "rest" is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be "resting" somewhere, which means it is "standing" or "sitting" there.
- A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To rest an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "rest (oneself)" could also be translated as to "stop working" or to "refresh himself" or to "stop carrying burdens."
- To "rest" an object on something could be translated as to "place" or "put" or "set" that object on something.
- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace" or "I will empower you to relax and trust in me."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the other people" or "everything that is left."

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Revelation 14:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771,

H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

return, returns, returned, returning

Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" something means to start doing that activity again. To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also:
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

revere, revered, reverence, reverences, reverent

Definition:

The term "reverence" refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. "Revere" someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God's commandments.
- This term could also be translated as "fear and honor" or "sincere respect."

(See also: fear, fears, afraid, honor, honors,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:15-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- Isaiah 44:17
- Psalms 005:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G127, G1788, G2125, G2412, G5399, G5401

reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Isaiah 40:9-10
- Luke 06:35-36
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4864, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8011, H8021, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

robe, robes, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, royalty, tunic, tunics)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22-24
- Luke 20:45-47
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2066, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

rod, rods

Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: staff, staffs,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins,
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:22-24
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

royal, royalty

Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."
- The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly. palace, palaces, priest, priests, priesthood, purple, queen, queens, robe, robes, robed)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 07:12-13
- Genesis 49:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H1921, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, H8237, G933, G934, G937

ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
- The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4383, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2679, G2692, G3639, G4485

rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
- Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
- The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, authorities, govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11-12
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:41-42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25-28
- Titus 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

run, runs, runner, runners, running

Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To "run in such a way as to win the prize"– refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To "run in the path of your commands" – means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands. * To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods. * "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow." The border of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country." * Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry." * The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."*

(See also: false god, persevere,
refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering,
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:1-2
- Galatians 05:5-8
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Proverbs 01:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1518, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1632, G1998, G2027, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370,

G4390, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5295, G5302, G5343

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
- Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
- The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, ashes, dust, camel, camels, goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids, humble, humbles, humbled, humility,
mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully,
repent, repents, repented, repentance, sign, signs, proof, reminder)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31-32
- Genesis 37:34-36
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 10:13-15
- Matthew 11:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: altar, altars, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, priests, priesthood, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 21:25-26
- Genesis 04:3-5

- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12-14
- Matthew 05:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

sandal, sandals

Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- Joshua 05:14-15
- Mark 06:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

scepter, scepters

Definition:

The term "scepter" refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as "ruling rod" or "king's rod.

(See also: authority, authorities, Christ,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly,
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

- Amos 01:5
- Esther 04:9-12
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 01:8-9
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Psalms 045:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G4464

scroll, scrolls

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed, synagogue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:1-3
- Luke 04:16-17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 05:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

sea cow

Definition:

The term "sea cow" refers to a large sea animal that eats sea grass and other vegetation on the ocean floor.

- A sea cow is grey with thick skin. It moves in the water by using its flippers.
- The skins or hides of the sea cow were used by people in Bible times for making tents. These animal hides were also used in the coverings for the tabernacle.
- It was nicknamed "sea cow" because it eats grass like a cow, but it is not similar to a cow in other ways.
- Related animals are the "dugong" and the "manatee."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: tabernacle)

Bible References:

- Numbers 04:5-6
- Numbers 04:12-14
- Numbers 04:24-26

The person who received the scroll would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8476

seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place)

Bible References:

- Exodus 02:3-4
- Isaiah 29:11-12
- John 06:26-27
- Matthew 27:65-66
- Revelation 05:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

seed, semen

Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called semen.
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:30-32
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Jeremiah 02:20-22
- Matthew 13:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H2234, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701,

G4703

seek, seeks, seeking, sought

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: just, true, truth, truths)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:13-14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:5-6
- Luke 11:9-10
- Psalms 027:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

seize, seizes, seized, seizure

Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
- In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
- This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
- The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14-15
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:28-29
- Matthew 26:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G724, G1949, G2638, G2902, G2983, G4815, G4884

selah

Definition:

The term "selah" is a Hebrew word that occurs mostly in the book of Psalms. It has several possible meanings.

- It could mean "pause and praise," which would invite the audience to think carefully about what was just said.
- Since many of the Psalms were written as songs, it is thought that "selah" may have been a musical term to instruct the singer to pause in his singing to allow for the musical instruments to play alone or to encourage listeners to think about the words of the song.

(See also: psalm, psalms)

Bible References:

- Psalm 003:3-4
- Psalm 024:5-6
- Psalms 046:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5542

self-control, self-controlled, controlled self

Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
- 2 Peter 01:5-7
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- Galatians 05:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4997

send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause...to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as to "send word" or to "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commis

(See also: appoint, appoints, appointed, redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 10:40-41
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake and "viper" refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, cursed, curses, cursing,
deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful,
deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive
, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, Eden,
evil, wicked, wickedness, offspring, prey, prey on, Satan,
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, tempt, temptation)

Bible References:

- Genesis 03:1-3
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 23:32-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, false god, prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored, faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:3-4
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

shadow, shadows, overshadow, overshadowed

Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
- It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: darkness,
light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:8-9
- Genesis 19:6-8
- Isaiah 30:1-2
- Jeremiah 06:4-5
- Psalms 017:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, H6767, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed

Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: false god, humble, humbles, humbled, humility, humiliate, humiliated, humiliation, Isaiah, repent, repents, repented, repentance, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17-18
- 2 Samuel 13:13-14
- Luke 20:11-12
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H6172, H7022, H7036, H8103, H8106, G127, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3856, G5195

shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: Metaphor)
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Paul also referred to him as the "great shepherd" over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
- The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
- In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
- The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief,

Canaan, church, churches, Church, Moses, pastor, pastors,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins,
spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

shield, shields, shielded

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, andt were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, Satan, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36-37
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 018:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

shrewd, shrewdly

Definition:

The term "shrewd" describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

- Often the term "shrewd" has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
- A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "cunning" or "crafty" or "smart" or "clever," depending on the context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2450, H6175, G5429

siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks

Definition:

A "siege" occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To "besiege" a city or to put it "under siege" means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To "besiege" a city can also be expressed as to "lay siege" to it or to "perform a siege" on it.
- The term "besieged" has the same meaning as the expression "under siege." Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Jeremiah 33:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4692, H4693, H5341, H5437, H5564, H6693, H6696, H6887

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Matthew 26:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

sin offering, sin offerings

Definition:

The "sin offering" was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal's body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus' death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: altar, altars, cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen, forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Leviticus 05:11
- Numbers 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

sister, sisters

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: brother, brothers in Christ, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22-23
- Philemon 01:1-3
- Romans 16:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, H1323, G27, G79

skull

Definition:

The term "skull" refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

- Sometimes the term "skull" means "head," as in the phrase "shave your skull."
- The term "Place of the Skull" was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
- This term could also be translated as "head" or "head bone."

(See also: crucify, crucified, Golgotha)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:35-37
- Jeremiah 02:14-17
- John 19:17-18
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1538, H2026, H2076, H2490, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6936, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G337, G615, G1315, G2380, G2695, G4968, G4969, G5407

slander, slanders, slandered, slanderers, slandering, slanderous

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To "slander" could be translated as to "speak against" or to "spread an evil report" or to "defame."
- A slanderer is also called an "informer" or a "tale-bearer."

(See also: blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:12-13
- 1 Timothy 03:11-13
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Mark 07:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5006, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060, G6022

slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering

Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
- The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
- Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: angel, angels, archangel,
cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen,
disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient, Ezekiel,
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery,
maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Isaiah 34:1-2
- Jeremiah 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969, G5408

slay, slain

Definition:

To "slay" a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has "slain" it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term "slaughter" is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a "slaughter."
- The phrase "the slain" could also be translated as "the slain people" or "the people who were killed."

(See also: slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Isaiah 26:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2076, H2490, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G337, G615, G1315, G2380, G2695, G4968, G4969, G5407

snare, snares, ensnare, ensnares, ensnared, entrap, trap, traps, trapped

Definition:

The terms "snare" and "trap" refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To "snare" or "ensnare" is to catch with a snare, and to "trap" or "entrap" is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A "snare" is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A "trap" is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can't get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase "set a trap" means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To "fall into a trap" refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who is starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as "ensnared by sin" in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty, , prey, prey on, Satan, tempt, temptation)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 07:26
- Luke 21:34-35
- Mark 12:13-15
- Psalms 018:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6315, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6679, H6983, H7639, H7845, H8610, G64, G1029, G2339, G2340, G3802, G3803, G3985, G4625

snow, snowed, snowing

Facts:

The term "snow" refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus' clothing and hair were described as being "white as snow."
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our "sins will be as white as snow" means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as "frozen rain" or "flakes of ice" or "frozen flakes."
- "Snow water" refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Lebanon, pure)

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:6-7
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:3-4
- Psalms 147:15-16
- Revelation 01:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7949, H7950, H8517, G5510

soldier, soldiers, warrior, warriors

Facts:

The terms "warrior" and "soldier" both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term "warrior" is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a "warrior."
- The term "soldier" more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for "warrior" and "soldier" that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also:
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, take courage, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging
, crucify, crucified, Rome, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:4-5
- Acts 21:32-33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11-12
- Matthew 08:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: , H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5431, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4758, G4961

sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft

Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer, false god, magic, magical, magician, magicians, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Exodus 07:11-13
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Revelation 09:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G3097, G5331, G5332, G5333

spear, spears, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, prey on, Rome, sword, swords, swordsmen, soldier, soldiers, warrior, warriors)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:18-19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

splendor

Definition:

The term "splendor" refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word "splendor" can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as "magnificent beauty" or "amazing majesty" or "kingly greatness."

(See also: glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, majesty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:25-27
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Luke 04:5-7
- Psalms 089:44-45
- Revelation 21:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1925, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2091, H2122, H2892, H3314, H3519, H6643, H7613, H8597

staff, staffs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, powers,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins,
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding)

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:8-10
- Luke 09:3-4
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and " command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, decree, decrees, decreed, law, ordinance, ordinances, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Numbers 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H6490, H7010

stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness

Definition:

The term "stiff-necked" is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God's authority.

- Similarly, the term "stubborn" describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as "stiff-necked" because they did not listen to the many messages from God's prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is "stiff" it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is "unbending" in that he refuses to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "pridefully stubborn" or "arrogant and unyielding" or "refusing to change."

(See also: arrogant, arrogantly, arrogance, proud, proudly, pride, prideful, repent, repents, repented, repentance)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:51-53
- Deuteronomy 09:13-14
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Jeremiah 03:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H3513, H5637, H6203, H6484, H7185, H7186, H7190, H8307, G483, G4644, G4645

storehouse, storehouses

Definition:

A "storehouse" is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a "storehouse" was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate "storehouse" could include "a building for storing grain" or "place for keeping food" or "room for keeping valuable things safe."

(See also: consecrate, consecrated, consecration, dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication, famine, famines, gold, golden, grain, grains, grainfields, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Psalms 033:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening

Facts:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
    - "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
    - "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
    - "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
    - "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
    - "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
    - "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
    - "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
    - "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
    - "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
    - "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
    - "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, persevere, right hand, save, saves, saved, safe, salvation)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:10-11
- Luke 10:25-28
- Psalm 021:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H905, H1082, H1369, H1396, H1679, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H2633, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4206, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5332, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7293, H7296, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8510, H8632, H8633, G461, G772, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1849, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

strife

Definition:

The term "strife" refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word "strife" implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "disagreement" or "dispute" or "conflict."

(See also: anger, angered, angry)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 03:3-5
- Habakkuk 01:3-4
- Philippians 01:15-17
- Proverbs 17:1-2
- Psalms 055:8-9
- Romans 13:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G485, G2052, G2054, G3055, G3163, G5379

strong drink, strong drinks

Definition:

The term "strong drink" refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
- Kinds of "strong drink" include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the "Nazirite vow" were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as "fermented drink" or "alcoholic drink."

(See also: grape, grapes, grapevine, Nazirite, vow, vows, vowed, wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Leviticus 10:8-11
- Luke 01:14-15
- Numbers 06:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5435, H7941, G4608

stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses

Definition:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
- The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: Metaphor)
- Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
- This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god,
refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- Acts 21:34-36
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H553, H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4693, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6696, H6877, H7682, G3794, G3925

stumble, stumbles, stumbled, stumbling

Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, "stumble" could be translated as, "sin" or "falter" or "stop believing" or "become weak," depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
- The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, stumbling block)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:7-8
- Hosea 04:4-5
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H4384, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

stumbling block, stumbling blocks, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as "stone that causes stumbling" or "something that causes someone to not believe" or "obstacle that causes doubt" or "obstacle to faith" or "something that causes someone to sin."

(See also: stumble, stumbles, stumbled, stumbling,
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:22-23
- Galatians 05:11-12
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Romans 09:32-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G3037, G4349, G4625

subject, subjects, subjected, subject to, be subject to, subjection, be subjected, are subjected, was subjected, were subjected, in subjection to

Facts:

A person is the "subject" of another person if the second person rules over the first. To "be subject to" is to "obey" or to "submit to the authority of."

- The phrase "put in subjection to" refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To "subject someone to something" means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term "subject" is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, "you will be the subject of ridicule."
- The phrase "be subject to" means the same as "be submissive to" or "submit to."

(See also: submit, submits, submitted, submitting, submission, in submission)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:14-16
- 1 Kings 04:5-6
- 1 Peter 02:18-20
- Hebrews 02:5-6
- Proverbs 12:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, G350, G1379, G1396, G1777, G3663, G5292, G5293

submit, submits, submitted, submitting, submission, in submission

Definition:

To "submit" usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to "submit to one another" means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To "live in submission to" means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The command "submit to" could be translated as "put yourself under the authority of" or "follow the leadership of" or "humbly honor and respect"
- The term "submission" could be translated as "obedience" or "the following of authority."
- The phrase "live in submission to" could be translated as "be obedient to" or "put oneself under the authority of."
- The phrase "be in submission" could be translated as "humbly accept authority."

(See also:
subject, subjects, subjected, subject to, be subject to, subjection, be subjected, are subjected, was subjected, were subjected, in subjection to
)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 03:1-2
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, H7511, G5226, G5293

suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings

Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase "suffer me" means "bear with me" or "hear me out" or "listen patiently."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Psalms 022:24-25
- Revelation 01:9-11
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, "I have seen the **suffering** of my people."
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, "My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**."

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

sulfur, sulfurous

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: Gomorrah, judge, judges, judgment, judgments, Lot, rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, Sodom, godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:23-25
- Isaiah 34:8-10
- Luke 17:28-29
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1614, G2303

sweep, sweeps, swept, sweeping

Facts:

To "sweep" usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. "Swept" is the past tense of "sweep." These words are also used figuratively.

- The term "sweep" is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would "sweep through" the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term "sweep" can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are "sweeping over" him.

(See also: Assyria, Isaiah, Judah,
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:3-4
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24-26
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 090:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5502, H5595, H7857, H8804, G4216, G4563, G4951

sword, swords, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, tongues, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Matthew 26:55-56
- Revelation 01:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

tax, taxes, taxed, taxing, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector, tax collectors,

Definition:

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
- To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government.
- A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: Jew, Rome, sin,)

Bible References

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29

- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Luke 05:27-28
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:06 He said, "Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader." 34:07 "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.'" 34:09 "But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.'" 34:10 Then Jesus said, "I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector's prayer and declared him to be righteous." 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

Word Data:

- Tax: Strong's: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G583, G5411
- Tax Collector: Strong's: H5065, H5674, G5057, G5058

teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught

Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term "doctrine" refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God's instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as "teachings from God" or "what God teaches us."
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."

(See also:
instruct, instructs, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructors, teacher, teachers, Teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14-16
- Luke 04:31-32
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Psalms 032:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

teacher, teachers, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: disciple, disciples,
preach, preached, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations
)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18-20
- James 03:1-2
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:39-40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?"
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, "Let's go back to Judea." "But **Teacher**," the disciples answered, "Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!"

- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, **Teacher**," and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

Ten Commandments

Facts:

The "Ten Commandments" were commands that God gave to Moses on Mount Sinai while the Israelites were living in the desert on their way to the land of Canaan. God wrote these commands on two large slabs of stone.

- God gave the Israelites many commands to obey, but the Ten Commandments were special commands to help the Israelites love and worship God and love other people.
- These commandments were also part of God's covenant with his people. By obeying what God had commanded them to do, the people of Israel would show that they loved God and belonged to him.
- The stone slabs with the commandments written on them were kept in the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the most holy place of the tabernacle and later, the temple.

(See also: ark of the covenant,
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments,
covenant, covenants, new covenant,
desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses, law,
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
, Sinai, worship)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Luke 18:18-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** Then God wrote these **Ten Commandments** on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses.
- **13:13** When Moses came down the mountain and saw the idol, he was so angry that he smashed the stones on which God had written the **Ten Commandments**.
- **13:15** Moses wrote the **Ten Commandments** on new stone tablets to replace the ones he had broken.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H6235

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term "tent of meeting" refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God's presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term "tent of meeting" was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: Israel, Moses, column, columns, pillar, pillars, tabernacle, tent, tents, tentmakers)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 01:1-2
- Numbers 04:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4150

tent, tents, tentmakers

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, curtains, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:44-45
- Exodus 16:16-18
- Genesis 12:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2583, H3407, H6898

tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

Definition:

The terms "tenth" and "tithe" refer to "ten percent" or "one-out-of-ten portion" of one's money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as "one-tenth" or "one out of ten."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, to minister, ministry, sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying

Definition:

The term "terror" refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To "terrify" someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A "terror" is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as "terrifying." This term could be translated as, "fear-causing" or "terror-producing."
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The "terror of Yahweh" could be translated as "the terrifying presence of Yahweh" or "the dreaded judgment of Yahweh" or "when Yahweh causes great fear."
- Ways to translate "terror" could also include "extreme fear" or "deep dread."

(See also: adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies, fear, fears, afraid, judge, judges, judgment, judgments, plague, plagues, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:24-25
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Luke 21:7-9
- Mark 06:48-50
- Matthew 28:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1763, H2111, H2189, H2283, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4048, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H8541, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing

Facts:

The term "thief" refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of "theif" is "theives." The term "robber" often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan's plan is to try to get God's people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: bless, blessed, blessing, crime, crucify, crucified, darkness, destroy, destroys, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, power, powers, Samaria, Satan)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33-34
- Mark 14:47-50
- Proverbs 06:30-31
- Revelation 03:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H6782, H7703, G727, G1888, G2417, G2812, G3027

thorn, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns, thistle, thistles

Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, crowns, crowned, fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Matthew 13:22-23
- Numbers 33:55-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing

Definition:

The terms "thresh" and "threshing" refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is "winnowed" to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a "threshing floor" was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A "threshing cart" or "threshing wheel" was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A "threshing sledge" or "threshing board" was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, grains, grainfields,
winnow, winnows, winnowed, winnowing, sift, sifting)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:6-7
- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Daniel 02:34-35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

threshold, thresholds

Definition:

The term "threshold" refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, "threshold" could also be translated as "doorway" or "opening" or "entranceway," depending on the context.

(See also:
gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways, tent, tents, tentmakers)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 09:3-4
- Isaiah 06:4-5
- Proverbs 17:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H624, H4670, H5592

throne, thrones, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word "throne" is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power. (See: metonymy)
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."

(See also: authority, authorities, power, powers,
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, reign, reigns, reigned, reigning)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

time, timely, times, untimely

Facts:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- To be "on time" means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."
- The phrase "times and seasons" is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as "certain events happening in certain time periods." (See: doublet)

(See also: age, ages, aged, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:6-8
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11-12
- Matthew 08:28-29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H268, H310, H570, H865, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3706, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6049, H6235, H6256, H6258, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3379, G3461, G3568, G3763, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4277, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

tongue, tongues

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
- In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person. (See: synecdoche)
- The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, gifts, Holy Spirit,
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
, praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy, rejoice, spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:9-11
- 1 John 03:16-18
- 2 Samuel 23:1-2
- Acts 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Philippians 02:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H762, H2013, H2790, H3956, G1100, G1258, G1447, G2084

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors

Facts:

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.

(See also: beast, beasts, everlasting, Job, Savior, spirit, spirits, spiritual, suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:7-9
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- Revelation 11:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G928, G929, G930, G931, G2558, G2851, G3600

tradition, traditions

Definition:

The term "tradition" refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word "traditions" referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God's laws. The expression "tradition of men" or "human tradition" makes this clear.
- Phrases such as "traditions of the elders" or "traditions of my fathers" referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term "tradition" in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: apostle, apostles, apostleship, believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief, Christian, ancestor, generation, Jew, law, Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Colossians 02:8-9
- Galatians 01:13-14
- Mark 07:2-4
- Matthew 15:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3862, G3970

trample, tramples, trampled, trampling

Definition:

To "trample" means to step on something and smash it with the feet. This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean "destroy" or "defeat" or "humiliate."

- An example of "trampling" would be the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field..
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by trampling grapes to remove the juice from them.
- Sometimes the term to "trample" has a figurative meaning of to "punish by humiliating," comparing it to trampling mud for a threshing floor.
- The term "trample" was used figuratively to express how Yahweh would punish his people Israel for their pride and rebellion.
- Other ways that "trample" could be translated include "crush with the feet" or "smash down with the feet" or "stomp on and crush" or "smash into the ground."
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated

(See also: grape, grapes, grapevine, humiliate, humiliated, humiliation, punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished, rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing, wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:28-29
- Psalms 007:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H947, H1758, H1869, H4001, H4823, H7429, H7512, G2662, G3961

tremble, trembles, trembled, trembling

Definition:

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: earth, earthen, earthly, fear, fears, afraid, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15-16
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:20-22
- Luke 08:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7478, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1719, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

trial, trials

Definition:

The term "trial" refers to a situation in which something or someone is "tried" or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term "trial" can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is "a testing" or "a temptation" is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, temptation, test, tests, tested, innocent, guilt, guilty)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 03:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G178, G1382, G1383, G2919, G3984, G3986, G4451

tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, clans, nation, nations, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 49:16-18
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

tribulation

Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
- "The Great Tribulation" is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: earth, earthen, earthly,
teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught, wrath, fury)

Bible References:

- Mark 04:16-17
- Mark 13:17-20
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9-11
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G2346, G2347

tribute

Definition:

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: gold, golden, king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly, rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled, tax, taxes, taxed, taxing, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector, tax collectors,)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:1-3
- Luke 23:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4060, H4061, H4371, H4503, H4522, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G1323, G2778, G5411

trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress.To be "troubled" means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Luke 24:38-40
- Matthew 24:6-8
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H598, H926, H927, H928, H1204, H1205, H1607, H1644, H1804, H1993, H2000, H2113, H2189, H2560, H2960, H4103, H5590, H5753, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7481, H7489, H7515, H7561, H8513, G387, G1298, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2553, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5016, G5182

trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, angels, archangel, assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled, earth, earthen, earthly, horn, horns, horned, Israel, wrath, fury)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:11-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:18-21
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 24:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

tunic, tunics

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See Also: robe, robes, robed)

Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:20-22
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:10-11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" can mean to "stop" doing something or to reject someone.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to

be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: false god, leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G576, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes

Definition:

The term "twelve tribes of Israel" refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham's grandson. God later changed Jacob's name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph's two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir, Israel, Jacob, priest, priests, priesthood, tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:6-8
- Genesis 49:28-30
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

understand, understands, understood, understanding

Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
- Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."

(See also: believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbelieving, unbelievers, unbelief, know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:45-47
- Luke 08:9-10
- Matthew 13:10-12
- Matthew 13:13-14
- Proverbs 03:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7306, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3129, G3539, G3563, G3877, G4441, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429, G6063

vain, vanity

Definition:

The term "vain" describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term "vanity" refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done "in vain," it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To "believe in vain" means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty" or "useless" or "hopeless" or "worthless" or "meaningless."
- The phrase "in vain" could be translated as "without result" or "with no result" or "for no reason" or "with no purpose."
- The term "vanity" could be translated as "pride" or "nothing worthwhile" or "hopelessness."

(See also: false god, worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1891, H1892, H2600, H3576, H5014, H6754, H7307, H7385, H7386, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1432, G1500, G2755, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3150, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3154, G3155

veil, veils, veiled, unveiled

Definition:

The term "veil" usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb to "veil" means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word "veil" is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But "curtain" is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "veil" could also be translated as "thin cloth covering" or "cloth covering" or "head covering."
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- 2 Corinthians 03:14-16
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Isaiah 47:1-2
- Song of Solomon 04:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7289, G2665

vine, vines

Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem." (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, grapes, grapevine, vineyard, vineyards)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9-11
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 15:1-2
- Luke 22:17-18
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

vineyard, vineyards

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."

(See also: grape, grapes, grapevine, Israel, vine, vines)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:6-7
- Luke 20:15-16
- Matthew 20:1-2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H64, H1612, H3657, H3661, H3754, H3755, H8284, G289, G290

virgin, virgins, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 01:34-35
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 25:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, H5959, G3932, G3933

vision, visions, envision

Facts:

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
- Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:9-12
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:21-23
- Luke 24:22-24
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

voice, voices

Definition:

The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: synecdoche)
- To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
- Sometimes the word "voice" may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: call, calls, calling, called, proclaim, splendor)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42-45
- Luke 09:34-36
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 12:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456, G5586

walk, walks, walked, walking

Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of"walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor, honors)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Kings 02:1-4
- Colossians 02:6-7
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 13:8-11
- Micah 04:2-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a "wasteland" or a "waste" refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term "waste away" is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 06:6-7
- Leviticus 26:37-39
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1110, H1197, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3765, H3856, H4087, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4875, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7722, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8437, G684, G1287, G2049, G2673, G4199

watch (biblical time), watches

Definition:

In biblical times, a "watch" was a period of time at night during which a watchman or guard for a city would be on duty looking out for any danger from an enemy.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites had three watches which were called "beginning" (sunset to 10 p.m.), "middle" (10 p.m. to 2 a.m.), and "morning" (2 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
- In the New Testament, the Jews followed the Roman system and had four watches, named simply "first" (sunset to 9 p.m.), "second" (9 p.m. to 12 midnight), "third" (12 midnight to 3 a.m.), and "fourth" (3 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
- These could also be translated with more general expressions such as "late evening" or "middle of the night" or "very early in the morning," depending on which watch is being referred to.

(See also: watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful)

Bible References:

- Luke 12:37-38
- Mark 06:48-50
- Matthew 14:25-27
- Psalms 090:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, G5438

watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful

Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To "watch out" is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- To "keep watch over" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:14-15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H5894, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G70, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

watchtower, watchtowers, tower

Definition:

The term "watchtower" refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term "watchtower" is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies,
watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Psalm 062:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H803, H969, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4024, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6076, H6438, H6836, H6844, G4444

water, waters, watered, watering

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of "waters" refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we "go through the waters" he will be with us.
- The phrase "many waters" emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to "provide water for" them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of "living waters" for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase "living water" to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, "draw water" could be translated as "pull water up from a well with a bucket."
- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: life, live, lived, lives, living, alive, spirit, spirits, spiritual, Holy Spirit, power, powers)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21-22

- John 04:9-10
- John 04:13-14
- John 04:15-16
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

week, weeks

Definition:

The term "week" literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term "week" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The "Festival of Weeks" is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called "Pentecost."

(See also: Pentecost)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:9-10
- Leviticus 23:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7620, G4521

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, grains, grainfields, seed, semen, thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing, winnow, winnows, winnowed, winnowing, sift, sifting)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:23-24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: grape, grapes, grapevine, vine, vines, vineyard, vineyards, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23-25
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:9-10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18-19

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, grapes, grapevine, wrath, fury)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:1-2
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Revelation 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

winnow, winnows, winnowed, winnowing, sift, sifting

Definition:

The terms "winnow" and "sift" mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words are also used in a figurative sense to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To "winnow" means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word "sift" refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, "winnow" and "sift" are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term "sift" in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be "shaking" or "fanning." If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chaff, grain, grains, grainfields)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31-32
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Proverbs 20:7-8
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5128, H5130, G4425, G4617

wise men

Facts:

In the Bible, the phrase "wise men" often refers to men who serve God and act wisely, not foolishly. This is also a special term that refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served as part of a king's court.

- Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The "wise men" who served pharaohs and other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.
- Sometimes wise men also performed magical acts such as divination or miracles that were done through the power of evil spirits.
- In the New Testament, the group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.
- It is very probable that these men were astrologers who studied the stars. Some have thought that they may have been descendants of the wise men whom Daniel taught when he was in Babylon.
- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When "wise men" is simply a noun phrase, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer, magic, magical, magician, magicians, Nebuchadnezzar, rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

wolf, wolves, wild dogs

Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term "wolves" is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as "wild dog" or "wild animal."
- Other names for wild dogs could be "jackal" or "coyote."
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as "evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep."

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness, false prophet,
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins,
teach, teaches, taught, teaching, teachings, untaught)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:28-30
- Isaiah 11:6-7
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:3-4
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Zephaniah 03:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G3074

womb, wombs

Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
- Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27-28
- Luke 23:29-31
- Matthew 19:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

word, words

Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see word of God

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: word of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Colossians 04:2-4
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

written

Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments, law, prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:28-29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:24-25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:11-13
- Matthew 04:5-6
- Revelation 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3789, H7559, G1125

wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful

Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Genesis 16:5-6
- Luke 06:27-28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

year, years

Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31-33
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:1-2
- Exodus 12:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened

Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term "leaven" or "yeast" is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term "leaven" is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, Passover, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:5-8
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:20-21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:5-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

yoke, yokes, yoked

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
- The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome, oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
,
persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors
,
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants, serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10-11
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Isaiah 09:4-5
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Philippians 04:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2201, G2218, G4805